I. Synthesis of C4-Modified Tetracyclines II. Aldolizations of Pseudoephenamine Glycinamide and Applications Toward the Synthesis of Monocyclic β-Lactam Antibiotics

The Harvard community has made this article openly available. Please share how this access benefits you. Your story matters

**Citation**

**Citable link**
http://nrs.harvard.edu/urn-3:HUL.InstRepos:17467383

**Terms of Use**
This article was downloaded from Harvard University’s DASH repository, and is made available under the terms and conditions applicable to Other Posted Material, as set forth at http://nrs.harvard.edu/urn-3:HUL.InstRepos:dash.current.terms-of-use#LAA
I. Synthesis of C4-Modified Tetracyclines

II. Aldolizations of Pseudoephedrine Glycinamide and Applications
   Toward the Synthesis of Monocyclic β-Lactam Antibiotics

A dissertation presented
by
Robin Judith Sussman
to
The Department of Chemistry and Chemical Biology
in partial fulfillment of the requirements
for the degree of
Doctor of Philosophy
in the subject of
Chemistry

Harvard University
Cambridge, Massachusetts
May 2015
I. Synthesis of C4-Modified Tetracyclines

II. Aldolizations of Pseudoephenamine Glycinamide and Applications

Toward the Synthesis of Monocyclic β-Lactam Antibiotics

Abstract

Part one of this thesis describes the production of C4-modified tetracycline derivatives. Our synthetic strategy originally targeted SF2575, a C4-oxygenated tetracycline analog with antiproliferative properties, but was later amended to target antibacterial C4-oxygenated minocycline analogs. The C4-modified tetracyclines were accessed utilizing a strategy based on the Myers’ platform to 6-deoxygenated tetracyclines (Michael–Claisen cyclization between AB enone 71 and D-ring phenyl esters 44 or 84) in addition to the 4th generation route to tetracycline key AB enone (Michael–Claisen cyclization between B-ring enone 8 and isoxazole 21). The crucial enabling step along this route was the C4-epimerization of Boc bis-carbonate 82 to Boc bis-carbonate 83. Five C4-modified tetracyclines were synthesized and their antibiotic properties were assessed.

Part two of this thesis describes the development of a new chiral glycine equivalent for aldol reactions, pseudoephenamine glycinamide ((R,R)-179), and an application of this methodology toward the production of C4-disubstituted monocyclic β-lactam antibiotics. Asymmetric aldolization of pseudoephenamine glycinamide with aldehydes and ketones produces syn-β-hydroxy-α-amino amides 180 with high diastereoselectivities and without the use of protecting groups. These aldol adducts can be transformed into enantiomerically enriched alcohols, ketones, and carboxylates, many of which enable powerfully simplified syntheses of various antibiotics.
Utilization of the newly developed methodology enabled access to β,β’-disubstituted-β-hydroxy-α-amino acids. Elaboration of these substrates provided novel C4-disubstitued monobactam analogs, an underrepresented class of β-lactam antibiotics. Four C4-disubstituted monocyclic β-lactam antibiotic candidates were synthesized and their antibiotic activities were assessed.
# Table of Contents

Abstract

Table of Contents

Acknowledgements

List of Abbreviations

Chapter 1: Studies toward SF2575, a Tetracycline with Antiproliferative Activity

1. Introduction

2. Biological Activity

3. Structural Differences and Implications for Bioactivities

4. Synthetic Approaches to the Tetracyclines

5. Retrosynthetic Analysis of the SF2575 Core

6. Literature Precedent: Non-stabilized Phthalides in Michael–Claisen Cyclizations

7. Synthesis of SF2575 AB Enone

8. Attempted Michael–Claisen Cyclizations

Chapter 2: A New Direction: Synthesis of C₄-Dedimethylamino-C₄-Oxygenated Minocycline Analogs

1. Chemical Transformations of the 4-Position of the Tetracyclines

2. Potential Implications for Biological Activity

3. New Strategy: Epimerization at C₄ and Synthesis of AB Enone

4. Synthesis of Analogs

5. Antibacterial Activity

6. Conclusions
For all those who believed in me.
Acknowledgments

First, I would like to express my gratitude toward my research advisor, Professor Andrew Myers. Without his patience and guidance, I would not be presenting this thesis to you. His dedication to excellence and commitment to devoting resources to study challenging and relevant problems has directly shaped my experience. Additionally, he has taught me about the proper way to conduct research in a synthetic organic chemistry laboratory and I will carry those lessons with me as I continue in this field. I would also like to thank Professors Stuart Schreiber and Eric Jacobsen for serving on my Graduate Advising Committee and providing advice on life’s challenges beyond the walls of the laboratory. I also owe a great debt of gratitude to my undergraduate advisor, Professor Barry Snider, who found a place for me in his group and encouraged me to pursue a graduate school degree. One of his graduate students, Olga Barykina, served as my first mentor and I am grateful for her guidance and support as I began to take an interest in synthetic organic chemistry.

The Myers group has been a wonderful place to learn, conduct research, engage in thoughtful conversions, and informally call home for the past six years. I am lucky to have been surrounded by colleagues and friends who share my excitement and interest in science. I enjoyed working with Dr. Dave Kummer, Dr. Amelie Dion, Dr. Peter Wright, Dr. Jonathan Mortison and Fan Liu on Team Tetracycline and Dr. Ian Seiple, Ziyang Zhang, Jaron Mercer and Claire Harmange on Team Pseudoephedrine Glycinamide. I am especially fortunate to have been able to share my work- and desk-space with two of the brightest chemists, Chong Si and Matthew Mitcheltree. Their patience with my never-ending stream of questions cannot be overstated. I gratefully acknowledge Dr. Dave Kummer for helping me settle in to graduate school and mentor me
through my first year and I am deeply indebted to Alex Zhurakovskyi, Fan Liu and Matthew Mitcheltree for reading and editing this thesis.

I would be remiss to not include acknowledgment of my family, especially my parents Phil and Janis Sussman, whose love and support has enabled me to complete this journey. Their patience and constant words of encouragement inspired me to continue and to exemplify my grandfather’s favorite motto: “Keep up the good work!”
## List of Abbreviations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Å</td>
<td>angstrom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>adenine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac</td>
<td>acetyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acac</td>
<td>acetylacetonate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allo</td>
<td>diastereomer (amino acid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aq</td>
<td>aqueous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-BBN</td>
<td>9-borabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bn</td>
<td>benzyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boc</td>
<td>tert-butylcarbonate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bu</td>
<td>butyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>cytosine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAM</td>
<td>aqueous ceric ammonium molybdate solution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cbz</td>
<td>carboxybenzyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDI</td>
<td>1,1’-carbonyldiimidazole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cis</td>
<td>Lat., on the same side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cm⁻¹</td>
<td>wavenumber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>dextrorotatory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DABCO</td>
<td>1,4-diazabicyclo[2.2.2]octane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DBU</td>
<td>1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DCC</td>
<td>1,3-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de</td>
<td>diastereomeric excess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEAD</td>
<td>diethyl diazenedicarboxylate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short Form</td>
<td>Full Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIPEA</td>
<td>diisopropylethylamine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMAP</td>
<td>4-&lt;i&gt;N&lt;/i&gt;,&lt;i&gt;N&lt;/i&gt;-dimethylaminopyridine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMB</td>
<td>dimethoxybenzyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMB</td>
<td>4-&lt;i&gt;N&lt;/i&gt;,&lt;i&gt;N&lt;/i&gt;-dimethylaminopyridine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMB</td>
<td>dimethoxybenzyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMB</td>
<td>dimethoxybenzyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMB</td>
<td>dimethoxybenzyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMB</td>
<td>dimethoxybenzyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMF</td>
<td>&lt;i&gt;N&lt;/i&gt;,&lt;i&gt;N&lt;/i&gt;-dimethylformamide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMB</td>
<td>dimethoxybenzyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMB</td>
<td>dimethoxybenzyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMB</td>
<td>dimethoxybenzyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMB</td>
<td>dimethoxybenzyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMB</td>
<td>dimethoxybenzyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNA</td>
<td>deoxyribonucleic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dppf</td>
<td>1,1'-bis(diphenylphosphino)ferrocene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dr</td>
<td>diastereomeric ratio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Ger., entgegen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDC</td>
<td>&lt;i&gt;N&lt;/i&gt;-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-&lt;i&gt;N&lt;/i&gt;′-ethylcarbodiimide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ee</td>
<td>enantiomeric excess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ent-</td>
<td>enantiomeric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>epi-</td>
<td>epimeric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equiv</td>
<td>equivalent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESI</td>
<td>electrospray ionization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Et</td>
<td>ethyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FDA</td>
<td>Food and Drug Administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FTIR</td>
<td>Fourier transform infrared</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>guanine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>gram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>hour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HMPA</td>
<td>hexamethylphosphoramide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPLC</td>
<td>high-pressure liquid chromatography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HRMS</td>
<td>high-resolution mass spectrometry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hz</td>
<td>Hertz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IC\textsubscript{50}</td>
<td>fifty-percent maximal inhibitory concentration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>coupling constant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KDA</td>
<td>potassium diisopropylamide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KHMDS</td>
<td>potassium hexamethyldisilazide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λ</td>
<td>wavelength</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>liter; levorotatory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDA</td>
<td>lithium diisopropylamide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LiHMDS</td>
<td>lithium hexamethyldisilazide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>molar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mg</td>
<td>milligram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μg</td>
<td>microgram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MHz</td>
<td>megahertz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIC</td>
<td>minimum inhibitory concentration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>min</td>
<td>minute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mL</td>
<td>milliliter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μL</td>
<td>microliter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mM</td>
<td>millimolar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μM</td>
<td>micromolar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m/z</td>
<td>mass to charge ratio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mmol</td>
<td>millimole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μmol</td>
<td>micromole</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
mol mole
MS molecular sieves; mass spectrometry
Ms methanesulfonyl
n-Bu normal-butyl
NaHMDS sodium hexamethyldisilazide
NCS N-chlorosuccinimide
nM nanomolar
NMR nuclear magnetic resonance
nOe nuclear Overhauser effect
p- para
Ph phenyl
Phth phthalimide
Piv- pivaloyl
Pr propyl
PMA phosphomolybdic acid
ppm parts per million
pyr pyridine
rac- racemic
R rectus (Cahn–Ingold–Prelog system)
Rf retention factor
RNA ribonucleic acid
RP reverse phase
S sinister (Cahn–Ingold–Prelog system)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Full Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SAR</td>
<td>structure activity relationship(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOCl₂</td>
<td>thionyl chloride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sp.</td>
<td>species</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TBDPS</td>
<td>tert-butyldiphenylsilyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TBS</td>
<td>tert-butyldimethylsilyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TBSCl</td>
<td>tert-butyldimethylsilyl chloride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TBSOTf</td>
<td>tert-butyldimethylsilyl trifluoromethanesulfonate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t-Bu</td>
<td>tert-butyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tet</td>
<td>tetracycline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TetA</td>
<td>tetracycline antiporter protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TetR</td>
<td>tetracycline repressor protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tf</td>
<td>trifluoromethanesulfonyle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TFA</td>
<td>trifluoroacetic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THF</td>
<td>tetrahydrofuran</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIPS</td>
<td>triisopropylsilyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLC</td>
<td>thin-layer chromatography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TMS</td>
<td>trimethylsilyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t&lt;sub&gt;R&lt;/sub&gt;</td>
<td>retention time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trans</td>
<td>Lat., across</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tRNA</td>
<td>transfer RNA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ts</td>
<td>tosyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UV</td>
<td>ultraviolet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Z</td>
<td>Ger., zusammen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 1

Studies toward SF2575, a Tetracycline with Antiproliferative Activity
Introduction

SF2575 (also known as TAN 1518X, 1) is a member of the tetracycline family and was isolated in 1992 from a Japanese soil sample containing Streptomyces sp. SF2575.\(^1\) The structure was established by NMR and X-ray crystallographic studies, as well as by NMR analysis of its degradation products (Figure 1.1).\(^2\) Unlike most natural tetracyclines, which exhibit broad-spectrum antibiotic activity, SF2575 displayed only weak antibacterial properties against select Gram-positive bacteria and was ineffective against Gram-negative pathogens. Two years later, TAN 1518A (2) and TAN 1518B (3) were isolated from a different Japanese soil sample containing the producing strain Streptomyces sp. AL-16012 and were similarly characterized.\(^3\) TAN 1518A exhibited weak antibiotic activity against Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria.

![Figure 1.1](image-url)

Figure 1.1: The TAN family of tetracyclines.


Biological Activity

Despite the lack of antibacterial efficacy, SF2575 and TAN1518A displayed unusual biological activities for tetracycline compounds – cytotoxicity. In fact, SF2575 exhibited activity against nearly every cell line in a 60-cell line screen performed by the National Cancer Institute (average IC\textsubscript{50} value of 11.2 nM). SF2575 and TAN 1518A were shown to inhibit DNA topoisomerase I, an enzyme which cuts the phosphate backbone of single- or double-stranded DNA before the DNA unwinds for replication and reseals the phosphate backbone afterward. Prevention of normal function of this enzyme disrupts DNA replication and causes cell apoptosis. DNA topoisomerase I is the target of many current anticancer medicines, including the camptothecin derivatives topotecan and irinotecan. The exact mechanism of action of the anticancer tetracyclines is unknown, but TAN 1518A was shown to interfere with DNA topoisomerase I in a different manner than the camptothecins. Access to a verified enzyme target through a new avenue allows for the development of a novel class of potential anticancer therapeutics and imparts the capacity to combat drug resistance. Therefore, detailed studies of DNA topoisomerase I inhibition by SF2575 and TAN 1518A was warranted. I decided to initiate the investigation by securing a synthetic approach to these compounds.

Structural Differences and Implications for Bioactivities

A structural side-by-side comparison of SF2575 with (−)-tetracycline (4) is shown in Figure 1.2. The SF2575 aglycon and tetracycline share the same 2-naphthacene-carboxamide skeleton. At C4, the (R)-dimethylamino group of tetracycline is replaced with an (S)-salicylate ester. The


5 The camptothecin antiproliferative agents bind to the topoisomerase I–DNA complex, preventing re-ligation and thereby causing DNA damage (See Schneider, E.; Hsiang, Y.-. H.; Liu, L. F. Adv. Pharmacol. 1990, 21, 149–183). In a biological screen, TAN 1518A did not stabilize the enzyme–DNA complex as did camptothecin (See Ref. 3).
C6 hydroxyl of SF2575 is methylated and its configuration is reversed. Additionally, SF2575 contains a glycosidic appendage, d-olivose 4′-angelate, at position C9. The lower periphery is conserved between the two compounds, except for the methylation of the hydroxyl at C12a on SF2575.

![Figure 1.2: Comparison between SF2575 and tetracycline.](image)

The loss of antibiotic activity in SF2575 was postulated to derive in part from the methylation of the C12a hydroxyl.4 It was well known that the lower periphery of tetracycline is actively involved in the binding to the 30S ribosomal subunit6 through coordination via a magnesium atom and through intricate hydrogen bonding to the phosphate backbone. The methyl group at C12a sterically interfered with these interactions as well as destroyed a hydrogen bond donor. Additionally, the (R)-dimethylamino moiety at C4 (empirically determined to be necessary for any antibacterial efficacy)7 was not present in the SF2575 scaffold and this also contributed to the loss of activity.

There is little data concerning the antiproliferative structure-activity relationships of SF2575. Cleavage of the C4- and C4′-esters, both individually and collectively, are deleterious to the

---


compound’s potency. The scarcity of data is explained in part by the mode of production of SF2575 and its derivatives. SF2575 was isolated from fermentation broths, while its analogs have only been produced by engineered biosynthesis, and these methods are inherently limited in their generation of diverse scaffolds. Therefore, the goal of this project was to access anticancer tetracycline scaffolds as probes which would allow further investigation of SAR and lead to insights into the DNA topoisomerase I inhibition by tetracyclines.

**Synthetic Approaches to the Tetracyclines**

There are no published synthetic studies directed toward SF2575 (1), TAN 1518A (2) or TAN 1518B (3). On the other hand, multiple approaches have been developed toward various members of the tetracycline family. A detailed account of these strategies is outside the scope of this introduction; an overview will be presented. One approach, by Myers and coworkers, will be highlighted in greater detail, as it directly inspired the current goal (Scheme 1.1).

In 1962, R. B. Woodward, in collaboration with Pfizer scientists led by Lloyd Conover, reported the first total synthesis of (±)-sancycline (a tetracycline derivative with a single C4-(R)-dimethylamino substituent along the upper periphery), building the molecule in a linear fashion from the D-ring to the A-ring. Within the following five years, the Shemyakin and Muxfeldt groups published their syntheses of (±)-tetracycline and (±)-oxytetracycline, respectively, both

---


constructing the targets in a linear fashion from D to A. Thirty years later, Stork and coworkers disclosed an efficient synthesis of (±)-12a-deoxytetracycline,\textsuperscript{12} again constructing their target in a stepwise manner from a CD-ring starting material to the A-ring.

Only two enantioselective syntheses of (−)-tetracycline are known. The first one was published by Tatsuda and coworkers\textsuperscript{13} in 2000 (34 steps, ~0.002\% yield). Unlike the previous approaches, Tatsuda’s synthesis began with an A-ring precursor and built up the carbon framework from right to left. Additionally, Tatsuda and coworkers utilized an interesting convergent coupling to form the C-ring (page 12).

The second report on the enantioselective production of (−)-tetracycline\textsuperscript{14} came from the Myers lab in 2005 (17 steps, ~1.1\% yield). The Myers research group developed a convergent approach not only to tetracycline itself, but to the entire class of tetracycline antibiotics.\textsuperscript{15} The convergent nature of the synthesis greatly improved efficiency and overall yield, as well as enabled the production of a diverse set of analogs through modifications of the building blocks.

In 2005, Myers group researchers also reported the first total synthesis of 6-deoxytetracyclines employing this convergent strategy.\textsuperscript{15a} In 2008, the utility of the route was demonstrated, allowing expansive modifications of the D-ring coupling partners in the production of new tetracycline antibiotics.\textsuperscript{15b} Finally in 2011, Dr. Peter Wright extended the analog scope to include alterations of the key AB enone moiety.\textsuperscript{15c} The synthetic strategy for all these approaches was identical (Scheme 1.1, A).


Scheme 1.1: A: Myers convergent strategy to the tetracyclines; B: Myers convergent strategy to key AB enone 6.

The tetracyclic core was constructed from a stereoselective Michael–Claisen (also referred to as a Michael–Dieckmann\textsuperscript{16}) cyclization between two coupling partners: a D-ring ortho-toluate anion 5 and key AB enone 6. The resulting pentacyclic (or occasionally hexacyclic) intermediate was subjected to a two-step deprotection sequence, affording a tetracycline derivative 7. This robust method tolerated substitution at a variety of positions which allowed for modifications at sites previously inaccessible by semi-synthesis or other means (Figure 1.3), and this platform has been utilized in the production of over 3000 fully synthetic analogs to date.\textsuperscript{17}

\textsuperscript{16} A Claisen reaction is defined as a base mediated condensation between a nucleophilic ester enolate and an electrophilic ester carbonyl, thereby producing a β-keto ester. A Dieckmann cyclization is a subset of a Claisen reaction, in which the two esters are tethered and a cyclic β-keto ester is synthesized. See Kürti, L.; Czakó, B. Strategic Applications of Named Reaction in Organic Synthesis. Elsevier, Inc: Amsterdam, 2005. p. 86. While it may be correct to classify the A- and the C-ring forming reactions as Michael–Dieckmann cyclizations, we decided to exclusively use the more general Michael–Claisen moniker.

To obtain large quantities of the key tetracycline AB enone 6 for the production of additional analogs, a more scalable route was sought. In 2011, Dr. David Kummer, Dr. Derun Li and Dr. Amelie Dion developed the third and fourth generation routes to this key intermediate,\(^\text{19}\) taking advantage of a second stereoselective Michael–Claisen cyclization (summarized in Scheme 1.1, B, detailed in Scheme 1.2). This stereoselective cyclization brought together a dimethylamino isoxazole methyl ester 9 and a modified cyclohexenone 8 in a single operation to yield a single diastereomer of the Michael–Claisen adduct 14, which was converted into AB enone 6 in four additional steps.

\(^{18}\) To date, no modifications to the C4-position have been disclosed utilizing this strategy. See Chapter 2.

Scheme 1.2: Myers 4th generation route to the tetracycline AB enone 6.

Lithiated cyclopentadiene 10 was trapped with phenyldimethylsilyl chloride to give silyl cyclopentadiene 11, which then underwent a one-pot Diels–Alder cycloaddition with \( p \)-benzoquinone, followed by a Luche reduction to afford meso diol 12. The diol 12 was subjected to enzymatic resolution with an Amano lipase, and the optically enriched acetate 13 then underwent a palladium-mediated rearrangement yielding silyl B-ring enone 8. Treatment of this enone 8 with the sodium enolate of isoxazole methyl ester 9 followed by the addition of KHMDS afforded Michael–Claisen adduct 14 as a single diastereomer. The silyl cyclopentadiene auxiliary was removed (and then recycled) upon heating the adduct 14 to give
enol 15. Oxidation of enol 15 with Davis oxaziridine 16 in the presence of catalytic lithium tert-butoxide produced hydroxy enone 17. The dimethylamino group at C4 was epimerized upon treatment with a mildly acidic NaH₂PO₄ solution. The C12a hydroxyl was protected as a TBS ether, completing the synthesis of the key tetracycline AB enone 6.

This route had a number of advantages over the previously reported methods.⁵ The chemistry was easily scalable, affording 41.6 g of 6 in a single batch in 35% overall yield. Many of the intermediates were crystalline and no column chromatography was required. Furthermore, the silyl cyclopentadiene 11 could be recovered and recycled through multiple iterations of this sequence.

**Retrosynthetic Analysis of the SF2575 Core**

Retrosynthetic analysis of the target SF2575 (1) was performed (Scheme 1.3). The salicylate ester at C4 and the C-aryl glycosidic appendage at C9 were the first logical disconnections, simplifying the structure to a fully functionalized SF2575 core 18. This core was considered a key intermediate in our strategy to access not only the anticancer tetracycline family, but also a wider scope of analogs. Modifications of this diversifiable core were expected to produce a variety of scaffolds.

Compound 18 could be formed by a Michael–Claisen cyclization between a phthalide D-ring precursor 19 and an AB enone 20, followed by methylation of the C6 hydroxyl. The AB enone 20 could itself be synthesized by another Michael–Claisen cyclization, this time utilizing isoxazole methyl ester 21 and the previously mentioned silyl B-ring enone 8 (cf. the ⁴th generation route to the tetracycline AB enone 6).

---

Scheme 1.3: Retrosynthetic analysis of SF2575.

The retrosynthetic plan outlined above did not expound the construction of the glycosidic linkage at C9 or the salicylate ester at C4. Ample precedent is known for the syntheses of both C-aryl glycosides\(^\text{21}\) and salicylate esters.\(^\text{22}\) The main objective in presenting SF2575 as a synthetic target was to establish an initial aim in research and to introduce strategies and compounds which would ultimately lead to the achievement of a different goal (see Chapter 2).


Literature Precedent: Non-stabilized Phthalides in Michael–Claisen Cyclizations

Before experimenting with non-stabilized phthalides\(^{23}\) as Michael–Claisen coupling partners, I investigated the viability of this strategy. Listed below are selected literature examples of the desired transformation, including some found only in Myers group theses.

The first example of a Michael–Claisen reaction utilizing a non-stabilized phthalide was disclosed by Broom and Sammes\(^ {24}\) in 1978 (Scheme 1.4). Treatment of compound 22 with LDA in THF at \(-78\) °C, followed by the addition of methyl crotonate, provided Michael–Claisen product 23 in 48% yield as a mixture of diastereomers. This instance showed that a phthalide enolate can attack a suitable Michael acceptor and then undergo a Claisen cyclization.

Another example of a Michael–Claisen cyclization with a phthalide coupling partner came from Tatsuta’s report in 2000 on the first enantioselective synthesis of \((-\)-tetracycline) (Scheme 1.5).\(^ {12}\) Subjection of phthalide 24 to LDA in THF at \(-40\) °C, followed by the addition of enone 25 at the reduced temperature provided Michael–Claisen product 26 in 80% yield. The configuration of positions C5a or C6 was not discussed, however this was insignificant: the C6 hydroxyl was eliminated in the subsequent step, forming an aromatic CD-ring system and obviating any stereochemical data.

---

\(^{23}\) The term “non-stabilized phthalide” includes substrates which lack strong electron withdrawing groups, for example phenylsulfonyl or cyano functionalities, at the benzylic position. More common Michael–Claisen cyclizations of stabilized phthalides typically afford aromatic quinone products and are known as Hauser annulations.

Scheme 1.5: Tatsuta’s Michael–Claisen cyclization to form the tetracyclic core.

The Myers group began to study the feasibility of a Michael–Claisen strategy to build tetracycline C-rings with phthalide D-ring precursors in the late 1990s (Scheme 1.6). Dr. Cynthia Parrish discovered that treatment of phthalide 24 with KHMD in THF at –78 °C, followed by the addition of model AB enone system 27 provided Michael–Claisen product 28 in 38% yield.25 The stereochemical outcome of the C6 position did not match that of tetracycline as shown by nOe experiments, but corresponded to the desired C6 configuration of SF2575. This example, in combination with Tatsuda’s report, provided significant support for our pursuit of the SF2575 core using the aforementioned strategy.

Scheme 1.6: Michael–Claisen cyclization with phthalide 24 and model AB enone 27.

However, further studies in the Myers lab revealed a noteworthy challenge. Reactions of the same phthalide precursor 29 with either the tetracycline AB enone 6 or a closely related derivative 32, stopped at the Michael addition products (30, 31, and 33) and no Claisen cyclization occurred (Scheme 1.7).

Scheme 1.7: Attempted Michael–Claisen cyclizations with tetracycline AB enones 6 and 32.

Dr. Dionicio Siegel found that deprotonation of phthalide 29 with trityl lithium in THF at −78 °C, followed by the addition of the tetracycline AB enone 6 and warming to 23 °C, afforded Michael adduct 30 and silyl-transfer Michael adduct 31 in 72% as a 1:1 mixture (Scheme 1.7, equation 1). The reaction could be optimized to produce exclusively compound 30 upon addition of MgBr$_2$•Et$_2$O before quenching the reaction mixture. The configuration of the C5a position did not match that of tetracycline and the orientation of C6 could not be established.


27 In all reported Michael–Claisen cyclizations with the tetracycline AB enone 6, this is the only instance where the configuration of C5a was determined to be that of the undesired orientation. Therefore, we theorized that in this singular example, the C5a stereocenter was assigned erroneously.
Dr. Mark Charest discovered that deprotonation of phthalide 29 with LDA in THF at −78 °C, followed by the addition of the tetracycline AB enone 32, afforded only the Michael adduct 33 in 80% yield (Scheme 1.7, equation 2). The configuration at the C5a position corresponded to the desired configuration in tetracyclines, but again there was no assignment of the stereochemical outcome at C6.

Stepwise Michael reactions, followed by Claisen cyclizations, were attempted. However no Claisen product was seen under a variety of conditions. It was known that tetracycline and related compounds undergo retro-Claisen reactions under mildly basic conditions, yielding C–ring–opened compounds, such as isotetracycline (34) and isochlorotetracycline (36) (Scheme 1.8). These compounds closely resemble Michael adducts 30 and 33, suggesting that the C–ring–opened lactones are the thermodynamic products of a reversible Claisen cyclization.

![Scheme 1.8: Degradation of tetracycline and chlorotetracycline via retro-Claisen pathway.](image)

While it was encouraging to see examples of non-stabilized phthalides undergoing Michael reactions and Michael–Claisen transformations, it was clear that the use of these compounds as

---


D-ring precursors had a potential challenge of its own: the cyclization to form the C-ring was not a guaranteed event. Enlightened and determined, I decided to study the synthesis of the tetracyclic core of SF2575.

**Synthesis of SF2575 AB Enone 20**

Using the 4th generation route to the tetracycline AB enone 6 as a guide and Dr. David Kummer as a mentor, I started by targeting isoxazole methyl ester 21 (Scheme 1.9). Bromination of known hydroxy isoxazole 37 with Br2 in the presence of NaHCO3 afforded an intermediate 3-benzylxyloxy-4-bromo-5-(hydroxymethyl)isoxazole (not shown). Sodium bicarbonate was a necessary additive to minimize the production of 4-bromo-1-butanol, the side-product arising from THF cleavage with HBr. Protection of the primary alcohol upon treatment with TBSCl and imidazole gave the tert-butyldimethylsilyl ether 38 in 68% yield over two steps. One-pot halogen-metal exchange with Knochel’s i-PrMgCl•LiCl complex,30 followed by trapping the metallated isoxazole with Mander’s reagent (methyl cyanoformate) produced the desired isoxazole methyl ester 21 in 97% yield. While this method led to the release of toxic HCN gas upon workup, other reagents to install the carbomethoxy functionality (e.g. methyl chloroformate) were not as effective and significant amounts of isoxazole 39 were isolated.

![Scheme 1.9: Synthesis of isoxazole methyl ester 21.](image)

With isoxazole methyl ester 21 in hand, I explored the possibility of forming the A-ring by a Michael–Claisen cyclization (Scheme 1.10). Treatment of 21 with NaHMDS at −50 °C, followed

---

by the addition of the silyl B-ring enone 8, yielded intermediate Michael adduct 40 (based on TLC analysis of a quenched reaction sample, not characterized). Addition of a second equivalent of a different base, KHMDS,31 and warming the reaction mixture to –20 °C caused a stereoselective Claisen cyclization, producing Michael–Claisen adduct 41 as a ~15:1 mixture of diastereomers as determined by 1H NMR analysis. Pure adduct 41 was obtained in 72% yield after flash column chromatography.

Scheme 1.10: Michael–Claisen cyclization to form the A-ring.

The stereochemistry of Michael–Claisen adduct 41 was assigned by analysis of the coupling constants of the C4 and C4a protons and comparison to Michael–Claisen adduct 14. The bulky cyclopentenyl moiety effectively blocks the bottom π face of the B-ring enone 8, and therefore the addition of the isoxazole methyl ester enolate occurs from the top face, setting the desired stereocenter at C4a (Scheme 1.10). As with the Michael–Claisen adduct 14, the arrangement at the C4 stereocenter was of the (S)-configuration, which is the desired one for the SF2575 core. Future epimerization of this center would not be needed to target AB enone 20.

Dr. David Kummer remarked in his thesis, when describing the stereochemical outcome of this reaction applied to the synthesis of compound 14, “This is another example of high diastereoselectivity in the creation of adjacent stereogenic sp3-centers by a Michael–Claisen cycloaddition (the other being formation of the C-ring <…>), suggesting that this powerful ring-

31 The second equivalent of base was necessary to deprotonate the Michael–Claisen adduct to prevent premature quenching of the intermediate enolate by the product or by methanol, a side-product. Optimization of this reaction sequence for the production of compound 14 was performed by Dr. David Kummer. The conditions found to yield the best result for that transformation were applied to these substrates (Scheme 1.10).
forming reaction may be more broadly applicable as a method for the stereocontrolled construction of 6-membered rings, a problem more typically addressed using Diels-Alder chemistry.\textsuperscript{32} The additional example above supported his hypothesis of extending the scope of this methodology for the construction of 6-membered rings in a stereocontrolled manner.

Continuing toward the SF2575 AB enone (Scheme 1.11), I transformed the Michael–Claisen adduct \textit{41} into enol \textit{42} via a retro-Diels–Alder reaction upon brief heating in diphenylether in a pre-warmed oil bath at 170 °C (7–15 min, depending on the scale of the reaction), providing enol \textit{42} in 92% yield. Treatment of enol \textit{42} with Davis \textit{p}-nitropheryl oxiridine \textit{16} in the presence of a catalytic amount of \textit{t}-BuOLi at reduced temperature afforded hydroxy enone \textit{43} in 45% yield. This reaction produced a mixture of diastereomers at C12a, which transpired in the reduced yield.

Hydroxy enone \textit{43} was just one step away from the desired SF2575 AB enone \textit{20}. The C12a hydroxyl was deprotonated with LiHMDS in the presence of HMPA and the oxyanion was trapped with methyl triflate, affording AB enone \textit{20} in 83% yield. Overall, the route to AB enone \textit{20} was efficient and scalable, comparable to the 4\textsuperscript{th} generation route to the tetracycline AB enone \textit{6}. I obtained approximately 1 gram of \textit{20} in a single batch in 16% overall yield starting with hydroxy isoxazole \textit{37}.

Scheme 1.11: Completion of the synthesis of AB enone 20.

**Attempted Michael–Claisen Cyclizations**

With SF2575 AB enone 20 in hand, I attempted the formation of the C-ring by Michael–Claisen cyclization. Before testing the two novel coupling partners (the SF2575 AB enone and a phthalide D-ring precursor), I explored the cyclization between one known and one novel component. Analysis of the reaction products was expected to be straightforward because our lab has accumulated a wealth of data for this type of transformation.

First, the viability of the SF2575 AB enone 20 as a coupling partner was explored (Scheme 1.12). Treatment of the phenyl ester 44 (a minocycline D-ring precursor) with LDA at −78 °C produced a bright red ortho-toluate anion which was trapped with a solution of SF2575 AB enone 20 and the reaction mixture was allowed to warm slowly to −10 °C. A single tractable product 45 was isolated in 32% yield, in addition to the recovered starting materials. $^1$H NMR analysis, supplemented with mass spectrometry data, indicated that 45 was a Michael adduct and that the desired Claisen cyclization did not occur.
Scheme 1.12: Attempted Michael–Claisen cyclization with minocycline D-ring precursor 44.

Single crystal X-ray crystallography allowed me to assign the relative configuration of 45 (Figure 1.4). The phenyl ester enolate addition occurred from the bottom π-face of the AB enone 20, producing the undesired isomer at C5a.

Figure 1.4: Crystal structure of Michael adduct 45.
Upon closer scrutiny of the SF2575 AB enone 20, I realized that it was not an ideal coupling partner for the synthesis of any tetracycline family members for two reasons (Figure 1.5). First, unlike the tetracycline AB enone 6, it lacked the bulky tert-butyldimethylsilyl ether at C12a which would block the bottom π-face of the enone from nucleophilic attack. Second, the sp\(^3\)-hybridized centers at C4a and C12a force 20 to adopt a bent conformation in which the large (S)-tert-butyldimethylsilyl ether at C4 occupies the space above the π-face of the enone, preventing the desired mode of addition. Presumably, the combination of these two factors explains the isolation of Michael adduct 45 with the undesired configuration at the C5a stereocenter.

![Figure 1.5: Rationale for the stereoselectivity of Michael additions to 20 and 6.](image)

Concurrently, the practicality of using phthalide D-ring precursors as Michael–Claisen coupling partners was also examined, with the tetracycline AB enone 6 as a model system (Scheme 1.13). Deprotonation of phthalide 46\(^{25}\) with LDA at –78 °C produced an orange anion which was trapped with a solution of tetracycline AB enone 6 and the reaction mixture was allowed to warm slowly to –10 °C. After quenching, workup and purification, a single product (47) was isolated in 59% yield. Again, \(^1\)H NMR study and mass spectrometry data indicated the product was a Michael adduct.
Scheme 1.13: Attempted Michael–Claisen cyclization with phthalide 46.

Similarly to compound 45, Michael adduct 47 could be crystallized, and X-ray analysis confirmed the desired configuration of the C5a stereocenter (Figure 1.6), congruent with all tetracycline family members. However, the stereocenter at C6 was shown to have the tetracycline configuration, and not the one found in SF2575.

Figure 1.6: Crystal structure of the Michael adduct 47.

While this was considered an unfavorable outcome in the context of targeting the SF2575 core 18, there was another tempting application of this “negative” result. Michael adduct 47 required a single Claisen cyclization to form a protected version of tetracycline itself. If a one-
pot Michael–Claisen reaction or a stepwise Michael-then-Claisen sequence could be realized, then the most direct synthesis of (−)-tetracycline to date would be achieved.

Therefore, I executed extensive experimentation toward the tetracycline core. Direct Michael–Claisen cyclization with phthalide 46 was screened, using a variety of bases, reaction temperatures and other parameters. Additionally, a stepwise Michael-then-Claisen strategy was investigated, but I could not find conditions to effect the C-ring cyclization.33 The earlier observations by Drs. Dionicio Siegel and Mark Charest34 were replicated: phthalide D-rings are not suitable coupling partners with the tetracycline AB enone 6 to form tetracycline analogs due to the thermodynamic stability of the intermediate Michael adducts and the reversibility of the Claisen reaction.

In the final attempt to access either the tetracycline or SF2575 scaffold directly, I explored a Michael–Claisen cyclization with an open-chain D-ring precursor phenyl ester 48 (Scheme 1.14). Any cyclized product from the proposed transformation would be applied toward either SF2575 or tetracycline as a target, based on the stereochemical outcome at the C6 center. Treatment of phenyl ester 48 with LDA at −78 °C, followed by the addition of tetracycline AB enone 6, led to no reaction. Presumably, the reaction did not occur due to the inability to deprotonate the benzylic proton and to form the sterically hindered enolate 49.

Scheme 1.14: Attempted Michael–Claisen cyclization with phenyl ester 48.

33 Only decomposition products and recovered starting materials were isolated from these experiments.

34 See pages 13–15.
In summary, I synthesized an oxygenated AB enone (compound 20) based on the Myers’ 4th generation route to the tetracycline AB enone 6. Attempted Michael–Claisen cyclizations utilizing the SF2575 AB enone 20 or the phthalide D-ring precursor 46 toward the SF2575 core 18 were unsuccessful. At this point, I considered that SF2575 was no longer a viable target using the aforementioned strategy, and another class of accessible compounds which would capitalize on the advances made was sought. With an approach to an oxygenated AB enone, I decided to investigate C4-oxygenated tetracyclines.
Chapter 2

A New Direction: Synthesis of C4-Dedimethylamino-C4-Oxygenated Minocycline Analogs
Chemical Transformations of the C4-Position of the Tetracyclines

Despite extensive study of tetracycline structure-activity relationships executed by many researchers over the past 60 years, influence of substitution at the C4 position has been largely neglected, simply noting that an (R)-dimethylamino substituent is essential for antibiotic activity.\textsuperscript{7} Only semi-synthetic modifications to the C4 position have been reported. They are described in detail below.

In the mid-1950s, two groups, one at Lederle Laboratories and another at Chas. Pfizer & Co, independently isolated and identified C4-epimerized tetracycline.\textsuperscript{35} Upon treatment of tetracycline (4) with a solution of NaH\textsubscript{2}PO\textsubscript{4} in a mixture of methanol and water, it equilibrated to a mixture with compound 50 in a 3:2 molar ratio (Scheme 2.1). The Lederle chemists named this new compound “quatrimycin,” while the Chas. Pfizer & Co. researchers labeled their product “epi-tetracycline.” The newly epimerized 50 demonstrated significantly reduced bioactivity (roughly 5\%) compared to the parent tetracycline. This transformation was found to be general and was applied to other tetracycline family members (chlorotetracycline, oxytetracycline, etc.) and the reduced bioactivity of the C4-epimers was consistently observed.\textsuperscript{36}

\textbf{Scheme 2.1:} Epimerization of tetracycline.

\begin{figure}
\centering
\includegraphics[width=\textwidth]{scheme2_1.png}
\caption*{Scheme 2.1: Epimerization of tetracycline.}
\end{figure}


The Lederle Laboratory scientists also discovered a method to remove the dimethylamino functionality altogether (Scheme 2.2). First, the tertiary amine was quaternized upon treatment with iodomethane. Addition of zinc dust to the methiodides 51 and 52 in acetic acid afforded the reduced compounds 53 and 54, respectively. Both the quaternary salts and the dedimethylamino compounds lacked antibacterial activity.

Scheme 2.2: Synthesis of 4-dedimethylamino tetracyclines.

In 1964, the two competing groups at Chas. Pfizer & Co. and at Lederle Laboratories, also independently reported the isolation and identification a different class of tetracycline semi-synthetic derivatives – the 4,6-hemiketals 56 and 61 (Scheme 2.3 and Scheme 2.5). These interesting intermediates were further transformed into a narrow subset of C4-derivatives. These analogs served as empirical evidence that the (R)-dimethylamine at the C4-position was absolutely necessary for antibacterial activity.

A scientist team at Chas. Pfizer & Co. found that treatment of tetracycline hydrochloride (55) with NCS in aqueous solvent afforded hemiketal 56 (Scheme 2.3, equation 1). Reduction of the hemiketal was achieved under a variety of conditions – catalytic hydrogenation, sodium

---


hydrosulfite reduction or zinc reduction – yielding C4-dedimethylamino-C4-hydroxytetracycline (57) (Scheme 2.3, equation 2). There was no discussion of the stereochemical configuration at the C4 center, nor was tetracycline 57 submitted for antibacterial screening.

\[
\text{Scheme 2.3: Synthesis of tetracycline 4,6-hemiketal 56 and reduction to alcohol 57.}
\]

Additional transformations of hemiketal 56 were reported (Scheme 2.4).\(^\text{38}\) Subjection of hemiketal 56 to hydrazine or hydroxylamine afforded the hydrazone 58 or oxime 59, respectively. These derivatives were then both reduced to the free amine 50. Amine 50 was also produced directly from reductive amination of hemiketal 56 using hydrogen, platinum oxide, and magnesium chloride in the presence of excess ammonium hydroxide. The exact stereochemical configuration of 50 was determined by degradation studies and compound 50’s reduced antibacterial activity to be that of epi-tetracycline.
While studying 6-demethyltetracycline (60), a tetracycline derivative from fermentation broths of mutant *Streptomyces* bacteria,\(^{40}\) the scientist team at Lederle Laboratory led by Dr. Robert Esse simultaneously published their synthesis and derivatization of the corresponding 6-demethyltetracycline-4,6-hemiketal (61).\(^{39}\) 6-Demethyltetracycline (60), upon treatment with concentrated HCl and NaClO\(_3\) in acetic acid, was transformed into the corresponding 4,6-hemiketal 61, which was dubbed “tetracycloxide” (Scheme 2.5).

---

Dr. Esse demonstrated that 6-demethyltetracycline (60) could be recovered from tetracycloxide 61 by two methods (Scheme 2.6). Reductive amination of tetracycloxide 61 with excess CH$_3$NH$_2$ afforded secondary amine 62. An additional methyl group was installed using formaldehyde, H$_2$, and Pd/C, resulting in 64. Alternatively, tetracycloxide 61 could be transformed into oxime 63 upon reaction with hydroxylamine. Conversion back to the starting 6-demethyltetracycline (60) was realized after a catalytic reduction in the presence of formaldehyde. No explicit analysis of the configuration of the C4 stereocenter was mentioned in the initial report,$^{39a}$ however a more detailed discussion of the stereochemical outcome was provided in the following report,$^{39b}$ which suggested that epimeric 64 was initially formed, but was epimerized to 60.

**Scheme 2.5**: Synthesis of 6-demethyltetracycline 4,6-hemiketal 61.

**Scheme 2.6**: Transformations of 61.
Dr. Esse and the scientists at Lederle Laboratories utilized their tetracycloxide intermediate 61 in the production of the C4-amino tetracycline analogs (Scheme 2.7), and screened these derivatives for biological activity, thereby generating the first reported SAR of the 4-position.\textsuperscript{39b}

Reductive amination of tetracycloxide 61 with ammonia and variety of aliphatic primary amines afforded secondary amine tetracyclines of the general structure 65 (Scheme 2.7, A). These amines were shown to have the epi-configuration at C4, and all attempts to epimerize them failed. A subset of amines 65 was reductively alkylated, yielding tertiary amines 66. The tertiary amines 66 were also subjected to epimerization conditions, and 6-demethyltetracycline derivatives with the (R)-configuration at C4 (67 – 70) were isolated (Scheme 2.7, B).

\textbf{Scheme 2.7:} Strategy for the production of C4-tetracycline analogs (biological activity relative to tetracycline).

The antibacterial properties of both secondary amines 65 and C4-epimerized 60 and 67 – 70 were investigated (Scheme 2.7, B; antibacterial activity relative to tetracycline in parentheses).
Unsurprisingly, amines of the unnatural tetracycline configuration displayed weak antibacterial potencies. The C4-epimerized dialkyl analogs, however, retained much of the activity relative to tetracycline itself. In general, larger substituents on the amine led to greater reduction in activity.

These findings, made more than fifty years ago, comprise the known structure-activity relationships of the C4-position on tetracyclines. Tetracyclines are functionally dense molecules and semi-synthetic methods are limited in their ability to produce diversified analogs. Fully synthetic strategies, however, could access scaffolds unattainable by other means and represent the key to expanding the known SAR of the C4-position of tetracyclines. Based on the chemistry developed in Chapter 1, a C4-modified AB enone would achieve this exact goal.

Potential Implications for Biological Activity

Before proposing the synthesis of C4-modified tetracycline antibiotics, I considered the potential impact on both ribosomal and tetracycline repressor protein (TetR)\textsuperscript{41} affinities. Since tetracycline discovery, multiple studies\textsuperscript{42} have been devoted to the determination of the exact source of antibacterial action of the tetracycline family, including X-ray analysis of tetracycline bound to its target.\textsuperscript{6, 43} In the past three decades, incidence of antibiotic resistance (both in general and specifically to the tetracyclines) has spurred investigations of the underlying mechanisms. A brief review of the results will be presented here, including detailed analyses of the crystal structures of tetracycline bound to the 30S ribosomal subunit and bound to TetR.

\textsuperscript{41}Tetracycline repressor protein, TetR, contributes toward the primary mechanism of resistance to tetracyclines, energy-dependent efflux.


Tetracycline, coordinated to a Mg$^{2+}$ atom, binds to the 30S subunit of the bacterial ribosome, inhibiting protein synthesis by preventing the docking of charged aminoacyl tRNA to the acceptor site on the ribosome. Once the tetracycline is bound, new amino acids are not able to attach and elongate the nascent polypeptide chain. Tetracycline is a bacteriostatic agent; cessation of protein synthesis does not immediately result in cell death. Also, tetracycline binding is reversible; removal of the tetracycline from the ribosome restores bacterial viability.

Tetracycline interacts with the 30S ribosomal subunit through several bonding interactions (Figure 2.1). The magnesium atom, coordinated to the keto-enol group spanning the B- and C-rings, creates an intermediate which establishes multiple contacts with the phosphate oxygens of RNA nucleotides G1197, G1198 and C1054. Additionally, an intricate hydrogen-bonding network exists between the lower periphery of tetracycline and the ribosomal residues C1054, G1196 and C1195. There is an apparent π-stacking interaction between the nucleoside base of C1054 and the D-ring of tetracycline, as well as two hydrogen bonds involving the A-ring enol, one with the sugar component of A965 and the other with the phosphate oxygen of G966.

The crystal structures succinctly explain the empirically determined SAR for the tetracycline family: the lower polar hemisphere must be conserved for biological activity, while the substitution of the northern non-polar periphery is well-tolerated.
Figure 2.1: Tetracycline (4) bound to the 30S subunit of the ribosome from *Thermus thermophilus*. A. An overview of tetracycline bound to the 30S ribosomal subunit; antibiotic highlighted in red. B. A magnified look at the binding pocket; magnesium atom highlighted in purple. C. Schematic depiction of binding interactions between tetracycline coordinated to Mg$^{2+}$ and the 30S subunit of the ribosome; distances in Å.

However, analysis of the crystal structure of tetracycline bound to the 30S subunit of the ribosome does not elucidate the purpose of the (R)-dimethylamino group at the C4-position. No constructive interactions between the dimethylamino substituent and the ribosome were observed and the role of this functionally important moiety remained unclear. Ostensibly, replacement of the 4-(R)-dimethylamino group should not impact tetracyclines’ affinity for the ribosome and C4-modified tetracycline analogs were established as synthetic targets.
We also considered how C4-modification of tetracycline antibiotics would impact resistance mechanisms. There are three types of tetracycline resistance (in order of importance): efflux, ribosomal protection proteins (RPPs) and structural modifications. Inactivation of tetracyclines by structural alterations was not considered a clinically relevant mechanism of resistance due to its occurrence only in anaerobic bacteria under specific conditions. Ribosomal protection proteins are postulated to bind to the tetracycline–ribosome complex at a distal location, causing a conformational change which dislodges the antibiotic without disrupting protein synthesis. I realized that I could not predict a priori how modifications of the C4-position of tetracycline would affect these specific resistance mechanisms.

Energy-dependent tetracycline efflux constitutes the primary mode of resistance to the tetracyclines. This process is mediated by efflux pump (antiporter) proteins such as TetA and is regulated by a repressor protein, TetR. TetR controls TetA expression at the transcription level. Upon entry into a cell, a complex between TetR and tetracycline–Mg\(^{2+}\) forms. The affinity of the tetracycline–Mg\(^{2+}\) complex for TetR is 1000-fold greater than that for the ribosome. This binding initiates the expression of the resistance protein (TetA) and tetracycline is pumped out of the cell.

---


The three-dimensional structure of the tetracycline–Mg\(^{2+}\) complex bound to the TetR protein has been determined using X-ray crystallography (Figure 2.2, B)\(^{48}\) and this provided an insight into the 1000-fold increase in binding affinity. As opposed to tetracycline’s ribosomal binding interactions which primarily engage the compound’s lower periphery (Figure 2.2, A), the TetR protein contacts surround the molecule and engage it as a whole. Of particular note, the asparagine-82 residue is involved in a hydrogen-bond with the dimethylamino substituent at C4. Interference with this constructive interaction should weaken tetracycline’s affinity for TetR. Additionally, the 6-hydroxyl functional group would not be present in the proposed C4-modified analogs, thus removing a second binding interaction and enabling the production of derivatives that may overcome TetR resistance.

Figure 2.2: A. A different view of tetracycline (4) bound to the 30S subunit of the ribosome; magnesium atom shown in orange. B. Tetracycline (4) bound to the tetracycline repressor protein, TetR; magnesium atom shown in orange.

Thus, I indentified C4-modified tetracyclines as synthetic targets to probe the possibility of decreasing TetR affinity while maintaining antibacterial properties, thereby producing new antibiotic candidates.

New Strategy: Epimerization at C4 and Synthesis of AB Enone 71

I determined that AB enone 71 would be an appropriate key intermediate to access the C4-modified tetracycline derivatives (Scheme 2.8, equation 1). Myers’ platform for the
tetracycline synthesis would make C4-dedimethylamino-C4-hydroxytetracycline analogs of the general scaffold 73 easily accessible (Scheme 2.8, equation 2). Additionally, late stage functionalization of the free C4-hydroxyl group would lead to the production of a wider range of compounds including, but not limited to, ethers, esters, and carbamates. Furthermore, these C4-modified tetracyclines would be less likely to undergo epimerization reactions at biological pH, thereby potentially increasing the antibiotic activities of these compounds.

Scheme 2.8: Synthetic plan toward 4-dedimethylamino-4-hydroxytetracyclines.

To access AB enone 71 from the route to SF2575 AB enone 20, I identified hydroxy enone 43 as a common intermediate. I would need to invert the configuration of the C4 stereocenter of AB enone 20 (Scheme 2.9) and protect the hydroxyl at C12a. Proposed strategies for the inversion of stereochemical configuration included: (1) direct epimerization of the hydroxy enone 43 or the diol 75, (2) Mitsunobu reaction with a nucleophilic oxygenated substrate followed by saponification, and (3) activation of the free alcohol followed by displacement of the leaving group by an Sn2 reaction. The latter method would allow for an even wider AB enone substrate scope. For example, thiols, azides, and nitriles could be incorporated.

---

49 See Chapter 1 for relevant background.
into the AB enone scaffold (and they themselves could be further modified), continually expanding the scope of SAR studies of the C4-position of tetracyclines.

Scheme 2.9: Strategies for epimerization of C4.

However, none of the proposed methods delivered any desired product. Under the well-precedented conditions for tetracycline epimerizations,\(^{50}\) hydroxy enone 43 was either unreactive or decomposed. Under basic\(^{51}\) or acidic\(^{52}\) conditions, diol 75 was again either unreactive or unstable. Notably, treatment of diol 75 with a pH 4 buffer afforded cyclic ether 80 (Scheme 2.10) due to the addition of the hydroxyl into the Michael acceptor enone. Attempted Mitsunobu


\(^{51}\) Bases screened: pH 8 buffer, DBU, triethylamine, diisopropylamine or tetramethylguanidine at 23 °C for 24 h.

\(^{52}\) Acids screened: buffers ranging in pH from 4 to 6 at 23 °C for 24 h.
reactions were generally unsuccessful and the use of Brønsted acids (formic acid or \( p \)-nitrobenzoic acid) as sources of nucleophilic oxygen promoted the formation of cyclic ether \( 80 \).

![Scheme 2.10: Synthesis of cyclic ether 80.](image)

To investigate the activation and displacement strategy outlined in Scheme 2.9, I transformed the C4-hydroxyl into a tosylate by treatment with DABCO and \( p \)-tosyl chloride (Scheme 2.11). However, all attempts to displace the tosylate with a variety of nitrogen nucleophiles afforded only recovered starting materials or decomposition products. The AB ring system of \( 81 \) is highly oxygenated and further activation lowers the barrier for aromatization, the presumed decomposition pathway.

![Scheme 2.11: Synthesis of tosylate 81.](image)

A pivotal breakthrough in the exploration of C4-epimerization was achieved upon the re-functionalization of diol \( 75 \) with an electron withdrawing group (Scheme 2.12). Diol \( 75 \) was transformed into the Boc bis-carbonate \( 82 \) in 70% yield under standard conditions. This carbonate \( 82 \) could be successfully epimerized by treatment with DBU. The electron withdrawing group stabilized the nascent partial negative charge which formed at the C4 center.
upon treatment with DBU, allowing reprotonation to occur and establishing a thermodynamic equilibrium between 82 and 83. This process was not without decomposition pathways, but recovered 82 could be resubjected to epimerization conditions, thus providing sufficient quantities of Boc bis-carbonate 83.

Scheme 2.12: Synthesis and epimerization of Boc bis-carbonate 82.

With a reliable method for epimerization of the C4-position, the remainder of the synthesis of AB enone 71 was straightforward (Scheme 2.13). Carbonate 83 was treated with trifluoroacetic acid, producing syn diol 76 in 75% yield. Both hydroxyls were easily protected upon reaction with TBS triflate and 2,6-lutidine at 40 °C, delivering the AB enone 71 in 87% yield. Similarly to the 4th generation route to the tetracycline AB enone 6, the method proved to be scalable and afforded ca. 1 gram of AB enone 71 in the largest batch.

Scheme 2.13: Completion of the synthesis of AB enone 71.

Synthesis of Analogs

Application of the Myers’ platform for the construction of the 6-deoxytetraecycline using the AB enone 71 afforded a number of C4-modified minocycline analogs. Gratifyingly, treatment of
minocycline D-ring phenyl ester $^{84}_{53}$ with LDA at $-78 ^\circ C$, followed by the addition of AB enone $^{71}$, produced Michael–Claisen adduct $^{85}$ in 75% yield (Scheme 2.14). The stereochemical configuration of the C5a center matched the one found in natural tetracyclines. Subjection of Michael–Claisen adduct $^{85}$ to the standard two-step deprotection sequence (HF in acetonitrile, followed by $H_2$, Pd/C) provided C4-dedimethylamino-C4-hydroxyminocycline (86) in 60% yield over the two steps.

C4-Dedimethylamino-C4-methoxyminocycline (89) was produced using a similar strategy (Scheme 2.15). Treatment of Michael–Claisen adduct $^{85}$ with HF removed the silyl and carbamate protecting groups, affording compound $^{87}$. Addition of one equivalent of Meerwein’s salt$^{54}$ in the presence of Proton Sponge$^{55}$ produced methyl ether $^{88}$ in 78% yield. I presumed that the enolic hydroxyl groups at C10 and C12 were engaged in hydrogen bonding with the carbonyl at C11 and therefore, methylation occurred at the most accessible hydroxyl group, (C4 as opposed to C12a). This hypothesis was confirmed through nOe experiments. The addition of more than one equivalent of Meerwein’s salt resulted in a mixture of products which contained methylation at multiple sites. Hydrogenolysis of the isoxazole of compound $^{88}$ gave C4-dedimethylamino-C4-methoxyminocycline (89) in 75% yield.

$^{53}$ The decision to synthesize minocycline analogs was rooted in the availabilities of the tert-butylcarbonate D-ring precursor $^{84}$ and the benzyl ether D-ring precursor (compound 44, page 20) in the lab.

$^{54}$ Trimethyloxonium tetrafluoroborate.

$^{55}$ 1,8-Bis(dimethylamino)naphthalene.
Three additional 4-modified analogs were prepared by late-stage functionalization of Michael–Claisen adducts 85 and 90 (Scheme 2.16). Chemo-selective deprotection of the C4 silyl ether was achieved with either triethylamine trihydrofluoride or pyridine-buffered HF. The free hydroxyl group was then functionalized as an ether or an ester and the resulting compound was subjected to appropriate deprotection conditions, affording C4-modified minocycline analogs 91, 92, and 93.

These three analogs were prepared for the following reasons. The salicyl ester 91 was chosen based on its relationship to the original synthetic target SF2575. The acetate 92 was synthesized as a “standard ester” to compare with 91. Lastly, the (2-dimethylamino)ethyl ether 93 was targeted to investigate the necessity of a basic amine in the vicinity to C4. In total, I prepared five fully synthetic C4-modified minocycline derivatives.

56 Upon extended treatment with triethylamine trihydrofluoride, both C4 and C12a silyl protecting groups were removed, but this intermediate (not pictured) was also transformed into a minocycline analog. See experimental section.

57 See experimental section for elaboration of reaction sequences.
Antibacterial Activity

Determination of minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) values, a measure of antibiotic potency, was performed at Tetraphase Pharmaceuticals. The results are summarized in Table 2.1. In short, none of the C4-modified minocycline analogs demonstrated significant antibacterial properties, but some general trends were established. C4-Dedimethylamino-C4-hydroxyminocycline (86) was slightly more potent than the C4-methoxy analog 89 against both Gram-positive and Gram-negative strains. The ester derivatives 91 and 92 were both completely inactive against Gram-negative pathogens, but the bulkier salicyl ester 91 displayed greater efficacy against Gram-positive bacteria than the acetate 92. The (2-dimethylamino)ethyl ether analog 93 was completely ineffective against the entire panel of bacteria.

Scheme 2.15: Strategy for the synthesis of analogs 91, 92, and 93.
Table 2.1: Minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) values for minocycline and 4-modified minocycline analogs (µg/mL)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>GP</th>
<th>GN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SA101</td>
<td>SA161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tetM</td>
<td>tetK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minocycline</td>
<td>0.031</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-OH-minocycline</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-OCH₃-minocycline</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-OAc-minocycline</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-O-salicyl-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minocycline</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-O-CH₂-CH₂-N(CH₃)₂</td>
<td>0.125</td>
<td>0.25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Conclusions

While it was accepted in the scientific community that a basic amine of the (R)-configuration is necessary for tetracycline antibiotic potency, the crystal structure of tetracycline bound to the 30S subunit of the ribosome did not provide an explanation for this at the molecular level. The dimethylamino substituent did not engage in constructive binding interactions to the ribosome, but did engage in a hydrogen-bonding interaction with the tetracycline repressor protein, TetR, a protein responsible for tetracycline efflux from the cell. Thus, I identified C4-modified tetracyclines as synthetic targets to probe the possibility of decreasing TetR affinity while maintaining antibiotic activity.

To that end, I developed an epimerization strategy to enable synthesis of AB enone 71 from hydroxy enone 43 and I accessed five C4-modified minocycline derivatives via Michael–Claisen cyclizations on AB enone 71. These compounds were screened against a panel of bacteria and were shown to possess poor bioactivity. At this point, I considered that the dimethylamino functionality must contribute to tetracyclines’ antibacterial properties via an alternate mechanism (as opposed to concrete binding interactions).

Due to the simultaneous presence of the tertiary amine and the vinylogous carbamic acid on the A-ring, the tetracyclines exist primarily as zwitterionic compounds at physiological pH.\textsuperscript{58} It has been theorized that both the zwitterionic form and a less polar, non-ionized species are required for biological activity.\textsuperscript{59} The unionized structure may diffuse through permeable lipid membranes while the zwitterionic species actively binds the ribosomal subunit. This supposition potentially explains the poor bioactivities of our C4-modified minocycline analogs. They may display weak antibacterial potency in part due to their inefficient entry into the bacterial cell.

\textsuperscript{58} At pH 7.4, only 7% of tetracycline exists in non-ionized form.

**General Experimental Procedures**

All reactions were performed in flame-dried glassware fitted with rubber septa under a positive pressure of argon, unless otherwise noted. Air- and moisture-sensitive liquids were transferred via syringe or stainless steel cannula. Solutions were concentrated by rotary evaporation below 35 °C. Analytical thin-layer chromatography (TLC) was performed using glass plates pre-coated with silica gel (0.25 mm, 60 Å pore-size, 230−400 mesh, Merck KGA) impregnated with a fluorescent indicator (254 nm). TLC plates were visualized by exposure to ultraviolet light, then were stained by submersion in aqueous ceric ammonium molybdate (CAM) or potassium permanganate solutions followed by brief heating with a heat gun. Flash-column chromatography was performed as described by Still et al.,\(^{60}\) employing silica gel (60 Å, 32-63 μM, standard grade, Dynamic Adsorbents, Inc.). Tetrahydrofuran, dichloromethane, and ether were purified by the method of Pangborn et al.\(^{61}\) The molarity of solutions of \(n\)-butyllithium was determined by titration against diphenylacetic acid as an indicator (average of three determinations).\(^{62}\)

**Instrumentation**

Proton nuclear magnetic resonance (\(^1\)H NMR) spectra and carbon nuclear magnetic resonance (\(^{13}\)C NMR) spectra were recorded on Varian MERCURY 400 (400 MHz/100 MHz), Varian INOVA 500 (500 MHz/125 MHz), or Varian INOVA 600 (600 MHz/150 MHz) NMR spectrometers at 23 °C. Proton chemical shifts are expressed in parts per million (ppm, δ scale) and are referenced to residual protium in the NMR solvent (CHC\(_3\): δ 7.26, D\(_2\)HCOD: δ 3.31).

---


Carbon chemical shifts are expressed in parts per million (ppm, δ scale) and are referenced to the carbon resonance of the NMR solvent (CDC\textsubscript{13}: δ 77.0, CD\textsubscript{3}OD: δ 49.0). Data are represented as follows: chemical shift, multiplicity (s = singlet, d = doublet, t = triplet, q = quartet, dd = doublet of doublets, dt = doublet of triplets, td = triplet of doublets, m = multiplet and/or multiple resonances), integration, coupling constant (\(J\)) in Hertz. Infrared (IR) spectra were obtained using a Shimadzu 8400S FT-IR spectrometer. Data are represented as follows: frequency of absorption (cm\(^{-1}\)), intensity of absorption (vs = very strong, s = strong, m = medium, w = weak, br = broad). HPLC retention times were acquired using a Beckman System Gold instrument equipped with a Chiracel OD-H column (5 mm particle size, 4.6 mm x 250 mm). High-resolution mass spectra were obtained at the Harvard University Mass Spectrometry Facility using a Bruker micrOTOF-QII mass spectrometer. LC–MS analysis was performed on an Agilent 1260 Infinity instrument equipped with a 6120 quadrupole LC–MS. X-ray crystallographic analysis was performed at the Harvard University X-Ray Crystallographic Laboratory by Dr. Shao-Liang Zheng.

(For clarity, intermediates that have not been assigned numbers in the text are numbered sequentially in the Experimental Information beginning with 94.)
Bromoisoaxazole 94.

3-Benzyl oxygen-5-(hydroxymethyl)isoaxazole (37) (19.8 g, 96.0 mmol, 1 equiv) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (200 mL) at 23 °C. Sodium bicarbonate\(^{63}\) (20.3 g, 241 mmol, 2.5 equiv) was added to the reaction flask, producing a white slurry. The reaction flask was placed in an ice-water cooling bath. Bromine (12.4 mL, 241 mmol, 2.5 equiv) was added dropwise over 30 min, whereupon the reaction mixture darkened to red-orange in color. The reaction mixture continued to stir at 0 °C for 1 h before the cooling bath was removed. After a further hour of stirring at 23 °C, an additional portion of bromine (3.00 mL, 58.1 mmol, 0.6 equiv) was added dropwise. The reaction mixture was stirred for 2 h, and was quenched by the addition of saturated aqueous sodium thiosulfate solution (200 mL). Ethyl acetate (400 mL) was added, followed by an aqueous potassium phosphate buffer solution (pH 7.0, 600 mL). The layers were separated and the aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (2 × 500 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution (750 mL). The washed solution was dried over sodium sulfate and the dried solution was filtered. The filtrate was concentrated and then dissolved in ethyl acetate (400 mL). The organic phase was filtered through a 2 inch pad of Celite, rinsing with additional ethyl acetate. The filtrate was concentrated and then dissolved in ethyl acetate (200 mL). The organic phase was filtered through a 2-inch pad of silica gel and Celite (1 inch of silica gel on top of 1 inch of Celite), rinsing with additional ethyl acetate.

---

\(^{63}\) Sodium bicarbonate was added to neutralize hydrobromic acid. Hydrobromic acid reacts with the solvent, tetrahydrofuran, to form 4-bromobutanol in significant quantities. Addition of sodium bicarbonate greatly reduced the formation of this unwanted byproduct.
acetate. The filtrate was concentrated, yielding an oily residue, which was purified by flash-column chromatography (5→30% ethyl acetate–hexanes) to provide bromoisoxazole 94 (23.1 g, 84%) as a white solid. TLC: (50% ethyl acetate–hexanes) Rf = 0.61 (UV, CAM); 1H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl3) δ: 7.47 (d, 2H, J = 7.3 Hz), 7.42–7.36 (m, 3H), 5.33 (s, 2H), 4.68 (s, 2H), 2.11 (s, 1H); 13C NMR (125 MHz, CDCl3) δ: 168.5, 167.9, 135.1, 128.6, 128.6, 128.2, 83.9, 72.1, 55.3; FTIR (neat), cm−1: 3369 (br), 3034 (m), 2931 (m), 1518 (s), 1359 (s), 1103 (s), 1016 (s), 694 (m); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C11H10BrNO3 + Na)+: 305.9742; Found: 305.9738.
Silyl protected hydroxyisoxazole 38.

Bromoisoxazole 94 (23.1 g, 81.0 mmol, 1 equiv) and imidazole (22.1 g, 325 mmol, 4 equiv) were dissolved in dimethylformamide (200 mL) and the yellow homogeneous reaction mixture was placed in an ice-water cooling bath. tert-Butyldimethylsilyl chloride (24.5 g, 162 mmol, 2 equiv) was added and the cooling bath was removed after 10 minutes. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to 23 °C over 5 minutes. After 15 min at 23 °C, methanol (100 mL) was added to quench the reaction mixture. The quenched solution continued to stir for 20 minutes at 23 °C before it was poured into a 1:1 mixture of methyl tert-butyl ether:water (800 mL). The layers were separated and the aqueous layer was extracted with methyl tert-butyl ether (2 × 300 mL). The combined organic phase was washed with saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution (750 mL). The washed solution was dried over sodium sulfate and the dried solution was filtered. The filtrate was concentrated and the yellow oily residue was purified by flash-column chromatography on silica gel (2% ethyl acetate–hexanes) to provide silyl protected hydroxyisoxazole 38 (26.2 g, 81%) as a light yellow oil. TLC: (40% ethyl acetate–hexanes) Rf = 0.33 (UV, CAM); 1H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl3) δ: 7.47 (d, 2H, J = 6.8 Hz), 7.42–7.36 (m, 3H), 5.33 (s, 2H), 4.68 (s, 2H), 0.92 (s, 9H), 0.13 (s, 6H); 13C NMR (125 MHz, CDCl3) δ: 168.5, 168.2, 137.3, 128.6, 128.6, 128.2, 83.4, 71.9, 56.0, 25.7, 18.3, –5.4; FTIR (neat), cm⁻¹: 2929 (m), 2858 (m), 1519 (s), 1361 (s), 1105 (s), 908 (s), 835 (s), 731 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C₁₇H₂₄BrNO₃Si + H⁺): 400.0767; Found: 400.0762.
Isoxazole methyl ester 21.

Silyl protected hydroxyisoxazole 38 (26.2 g, 65.6 mmol, 1 equiv) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (250 mL) in a 1-L, two-necked flask fitted with a graduated addition funnel and a septum with an argon inlet. The two-necked flask was placed in a 10 °C ice-water cooling bath. Isopropylmagnesium chloride–lithium chloride solution (1.3 M solution in tetrahydrofuran, 55.5 mL, 72.2 mmol, 1.1 equiv) was cannulated into the addition funnel, before dropwise addition into the reaction mixture over 15 minutes. Ice was added to the cooling bath to lower the temperature of the bath to 0 °C. Freshly distilled methyl cyanoformate (7.81 mL, 98.0 mmol, 1.5 equiv) was added slowly via syringe through the septum and the reaction mixture was slowly warmed to 23 °C over 1 h. The transparent, light brown solution darkened to yellow in color before a light yellow solid precipitated out of the solution. The reaction slurry was stirred at 23 °C for 2 h before saturated aqueous ammonium chloride solution (200 mL) and saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution (400 mL) were added sequentially. Ethyl acetate (400 mL) was added and the layers were separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (2 × 300 mL). The combined organic extracts were washed with saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution (600 mL) and dried over sodium sulfate. The dried solution was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated to produce an orange solid. The orange solid was purified by flash-column chromatography (3→7% ethyl acetate–hexanes) to provide isoxazole methyl ester 21 (23.9 g, 97% yield) as a white solid. TLC: (10% ethyl acetate–hexanes) R$_f$ = 0.37 (UV, CAM); $^1$H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl$_3$) δ: 7.48 (d, 2H, J = 7.3 Hz), 7.41–7.34 (m, 3H), 5.36 (s, 2H), 5.00
(s, 2H), 3.84 (s, 3H), 0.92 (s, 9H), 0.12 (s, 6H); $^{13}$C NMR (125 MHz, CDCl$_3$) δ: 177.2, 168.8, 161.3, 135.5, 128.5, 128.3, 127.8, 100.0, 71.8, 57.6, 51.8, 25.7, 18.3, –5.4; FTIR (neat), cm$^{-1}$: 2953 (m), 2857 (m), 1716 (s), 1510 (s), 1364 (s), 1113 (s), 835 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C$_{19}$H$_{27}$NO$_5$Si + H)$^+$: 378.1737; Found: 378.1731.
Michael-Claisen cyclization product 41.

Isoxazole methyl ester 21 (7.98 g, 21.1 mmol, 1 equiv) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (70 mL) in a 500-mL 3-necked round-bottom flask equipped with two addition funnels and a septum with an argon inlet. The colorless solution was cooled to –50 °C in a dry ice–acetone cooling bath. A freshly prepared 1.0 M solution of sodium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide in tetrahydrofuran (21.4 mL, 21.1 mmol, 1.01 equiv) was cannulated into the first addition funnel and then added dropwise to the reaction mixture over 15 minutes. Upon addition of the basic solution, the reaction mixture darkened to yellow, then orange in color. The solution was stirred at –50 °C for 45 min. Enone 8\textsuperscript{19} (6.54 g, 22.2 mmol, 1.05 equiv) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (30 mL) and added slowly to the reaction flask through the septum via syringe. The solution was stirred at –50 °C for 45 min. A freshly prepared 1.0 M solution of potassium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide in tetrahydrofuran (21.4 mL, 21.1 mmol, 1.01 equiv) was cannulated into the second addition funnel and was added dropwise to the reaction mixture over 15 minutes. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to –20 °C over 60 min before aqueous potassium phosphate buffer solution (pH 7.0, 250 mL) was added. Ethyl acetate (300 mL) was added and the layers were separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (2 × 500 mL). The combined organic extracts were dried over sodium sulfate and filtered. The filtrate was concentrated. The brown residue, a 15:1 mixture of diastereomers at C4, was purified by flash-column chromatography (1→5% ethyl acetate–hexanes) to provide the Michael-Claisen adduct 41 (9.85 g, 72%) as a light yellow foam as a single diastereomer. TLC: (20% ethyl acetate–hexanes) \( R_f = 0.70 \) (UV, CAM).
$^1$H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl$_3$) $\delta$: 15.23 (s, 1H), 7.50 (d, 2H, $J = 7.3$ Hz), 7.44–7.33 (m, 8H), 5.93 (s, 2H), 5.38 (s, 2H), 4.43 (d, 2H, $J = 4.1$ Hz), 3.34 (br s, 1H), 2.99 (br s, 1H), 2.93 (dd, 1H, $J = 8.7$ Hz, 4.1 Hz), 2.78–2.74 (m, 1H), 2.57 (dt, 1H, $J = 12.0$ Hz, 4.1 Hz), 2.13 (td, 1H, $J = 13.2$ Hz, 7.6 Hz), 1.68 (dd, 1H, $J = 13.7$ Hz, 7.6 Hz), 1.36 (s, 1H), 0.80 (s, 9H), 0.20 (s, 6H), 0.11 (s, 3H), 0.00 (s, 3H); $^{13}$C NMR (125 MHz, CDCl$_3$) $\delta$: 183.4, 182.3, 179.0, 167.9, 139.6, 135.4, 135.2, 135.1, 133.5, 128.7, 128.5, 128.5, 128.4, 128.3, 127.7, 106.1, 104.1, 72.3, 63.3, 53.7, 52.5, 49.9, 45.2, 40.1, 37.3, 26.1, 25.6, 18.2, –1.5, –1.5, –4.9, –5.1; FTIR (neat), cm$^{-1}$: 3067 (m), 2955 (m), 2857 (m), 1641 (s), 1508 (s), 1329 (s), 908 (s), 727 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C$_{37}$H$_{65}$NO$_5$Si$_2$ + H)$^+$: 640.2909; Found: 640.2906.
Enol 42.

The Michael-Claisen adduct 41 (10.7 g, 16.6 mmol, 1 equiv) was dissolved in diphenyl ether (166 mL) and placed in a warm water bath. To deoxygenate the solution, argon was bubbled through the stirring solution for 1 h. The reaction flask was removed from the water bath, dried and placed into a preheated 170 °C oil bath for 15 minutes. The colorless reaction mixture darkened to yellow as the reaction was heated. After 15 minutes, the reaction vessel was immediately placed in a 23 °C water bath. Once cooled, the entire reaction mixture was loaded onto a column and purified by flash-column chromatography (2 column volumes of hexanes to flush off the diphenyl ether, followed by 10→20% ethyl acetate–hexanes) to provide enol 42 (6.72 g, 92%) as a yellow oil. TLC: (20% ethyl acetate–hexanes) Rf = 0.40 (CAM); 1H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl3) δ: 15.1 (s, 1H), 7.49 (d, 2H, J = 6.9 Hz), 7.40–7.32 (m, 3H), 6.59 (m, 1H), 6.07 (dd, 1H, J = 10.1 Hz, 3.2 Hz), 5.39 (s, 2H), 4.70 (d, 1H, J = 4.6 Hz), 3.20 (m, 1H), 2.81 (m, 1H), 2.30 (dt, 1H, J = 17.4 Hz, 6.4 Hz), 0.83 (s, 9H), 0.15 (s, 3H), 0.02 (s, 3H); 13C NMR (125 MHz, CDCl3) δ: 180.5, 177.3, 174.2, 167.8, 141.7, 135.1, 128.5, 128.5, 128.3, 124.7, 101.0, 95.7, 72.3, 62.5, 38.0, 25.6, 25.5, 18.2, -4.9, -5.2; FTIR (neat), cm⁻¹: 3034 (m), 2955 (m), 1645 (s), 1506 (s), 833 (s), 729 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C24H29NO5Si + H)⁺: 440.1893; Found: 440.1915.
Hydroxy enone 43.

Enol 42 (6.72 g, 15.3 mmol, 1 equiv) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (76 mL) and the reaction flask was placed in a −35 °C dry ice–acetone cooling bath. 3-(4-Nitrophenyl)-2-(phenylsulfonyl)-oxaziridine (7.02 g, 22.9 mmol, 1.5 equiv) was added in one portion, forming a yellow heterogeneous mixture. Lithium tert-butoxide solution (1.0 M in tetrahydrofuran, 3.06 mL, 3.10 mmol, 0.2 equiv) was added dropwise to the yellow slurry at −35 °C. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to −20 °C over 30 min. Saturated aqueous ammonium chloride solution (75 mL), water (100 mL) and ethyl acetate (100 mL) were added sequentially and the cooling bath was removed. The layers were separated and the aqueous phase was extracted with ethyl acetate (3 × 100 mL). The combined organic extracts were washed with saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution (200 mL) and the washed extracts were dried over sodium sulfate. The dried organic phase was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated, producing an orange solid. The crude material was purified twice by flash-column chromatography (10→40% ethyl acetate–hexanes and then 50→90% dichloromethane–hexanes, followed by 3 column volumes of 20% ethyl acetate–hexanes) to provide hydroxy enone 43 (3.14 g, 45%) as a yellow foam. TLC: (20% ethyl acetate–hexanes) Rf = 0.31 (UV, CAM); 1H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl3) δ: 7.46 (d, 2H, J = 7.3 Hz), 7.39–7.34 (m, 3H), 7.02–6.99 (m, 1H), 6.24 (dd, 1H, J = 10.3 Hz, 2.4 Hz), 5.47 (d, 1H, J = 5.4 Hz), 5.35 (s, 2H), 4.58 (s, 1H), 2.97 (dt, 1 H, J = 10.9 Hz, 5.6 Hz), 2.81–2.75 (m, 1H), 2.38–2.32 (m, 1H), 0.96 (s, 9H), 0.27 (s, 3H), 0.21 (s, 3H); 13C NMR (125 MHz,
CDCl$_3$ $\delta$: 194.7, 179.8, 167.8, 150.1, 134.8, 128.6, 128.5, 128.3, 128.2, 126.9, 105.2, 80.7, 72.4, 64.9, 48.0, 25.6, 25.4, 18.2, $-4.9$, $-5.1$; FTIR (neat), cm$^{-1}$: 3439 (br), 2930 (m), 1708 (s), 1608 (s), 1510 (s), 1256 (s), 837 (s), 729 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C$_{24}$H$_{29}$NO$_6$Si + H)$^+$: 456.1842; Found: 456.1825.
AB enone 20.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{H} & \quad \text{OTBS} \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{N} \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{Bn}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{H} & \quad \text{OTBS} \\
\text{B} & \quad \text{A} \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{N} \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{Bn}
\end{align*}
\]

A 50-mL round-bottom flask equipped with a stir bar was charged with tetrahydrofuran (10 mL) and placed in a \(-78 \degree C\) dry ice-acetone cooling bath. A lithium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide solution in tetrahydrofuran (1.0 M, 2.77 mL, 2.77 mmol, 1.2 equiv) and hexamethylphosphoramide (0.802 mL, 4.61 mmol, 2 equiv) were added sequentially. A solution of alcohol 43 (1.05 g, 2.31 mmol, 1 equiv) in tetrahydrofuran (10 mL) was added via cannula to the cooled reaction mixture, resulting in a brown homogenous solution. After stirring at \(-78 \degree C\) for 5 minutes, methyl triflate (0.522 mL, 4.61 mmol, 2 equiv) was added and the reaction mixture lightened to orange in color. The reaction mixture was stirred at \(-78 \degree C\) for 2 h and then was allowed to warm to 23 \degree C over 15 min before quenching with saturated aqueous ammonium chloride solution (12 mL). Water (20 mL) and ethyl acetate (10 mL) were added and the layers were separated. The aqueous phase was extracted with ethyl acetate (\(2 \times 50 \text{ mL}\)). The combined organic extracts were washed with saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution (100 mL) and the washed extracts were dried over sodium sulfate. The dried organic phase was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated. The crude material was purified by flash-column chromatography (5→10% ethyl acetate–hexanes) to provide AB enone 20 (900 mg, 83%) as a yellow foam. TLC: (20% ethyl acetate–hexanes) \(R_f = 0.46\) (UV, CAM); \(^1\)H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl\(_3\)) \(\delta: 7.47\) (d, 2H, \(J = 7.3 \text{ Hz}\)), 7.40–7.33 (m, 3H), 6.81 (ddd, 1H, \(J = 10.1 \text{ Hz}, 5.5 \text{ Hz}, 2.3 \text{ Hz}\)), 6.08 (dd, 1H, \(J = 10.1 \text{ Hz}, 2.3 \text{ Hz}\)), 5.47 (br s, 1H), 5.38–5.33 (m, 2H), 3.57 (s, 3H), 3.12–3.07 (m, 1H), 2.75–
2.69 (m, 1H), 2.33–2.26 (m, 1H), 0.95 (s, 9H), 0.26 (s, 3H), 0.20 (s, 3H); $^{13}$C NMR (125 MHz, CDCl$_3$) $\delta$: 195.5, 185.9, 180.6, 167.7, 146.5, 134.8, 129.2, 128.6, 128.6, 128.3, 128.2, 86.5, 72.5, 65.0, 56.1, 48.1, 29.7, 25.6, 18.2, –4.9, –5.0; FTIR (neat), cm$^{-1}$: 3036 (m), 2932 (m), 1711 (s), 1510 (s), 1113 (s), 837 (s), 781 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C$_{25}$H$_{31}$NO$_6$Si + Na)$^+$: 492.1813; Found: 492.1829.
Michael adduct 45.

A freshly prepared solution of lithium diisopropylamide in tetrahydrofuran (1.0 M, 106 μL, 106 μmol, 2 equiv) was added dropwise via syringe to a solution of phenyl ester 44 (39.0 mg, 106 μmol, 2 equiv) in tetrahydrofuran (1.5 mL) at −78 °C in a dry ice–acetone cooling bath, forming a bright red solution. The solution was stirred at −78 °C for 40 min. AB enone 20 (25.0 mg, 53.0 μmol, 1 equiv) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (0.5 mL) and added slowly to the reaction mixture. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to −10 °C over 60 min before aqueous potassium phosphate buffer solution (pH 7.0, 6 mL) was added. Ethyl acetate (5 mL) was added and the layers were separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (2 × 5 mL). The combined organic extracts were dried over sodium sulfate. The dried solution was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated. The residue was purified by flash-column chromatography (5–15% ethyl acetate–hexanes) to provide the Michael adduct 45 as a light yellow foam (14.0 mg, 32%). Crystals were grown from slow evaporation of ethyl acetate and X-ray crystallographic analysis was performed in order to determine absolute stereochemistry of the Michael adduct, specifically determining the configuration of the C5a stereocenter. TLC: (20% ethyl acetate–hexanes) Rf = 0.44 (UV, CAM); 1H NMR (600 MHz, CDCl3) δ: 7.48 (d, 2H, J = 7.2 Hz), 7.43 (d, 2H, J = 7.2 Hz), 7.40–7.30 (m, 8H), 7.23–7.20 (m, 2H), 7.05 (d, 2H, J = 7.6 Hz), 6.88 (d, 1H, J = 8.7 Hz), 5.40 (d, 1H, J = 5.7 Hz), 5.35 ( s, 2H), 5.09 (s, 2H), 3.44
(s, 3H), 3.01 (br s, 2H), 2.87 (br s, 1H), 2.61 (br s, 6H), 2.58–2.54 (m, 2H), 2.44–2.41 (m, 1H),
2.13–2.10 (m, 1H), 1.75–1.71 (m, 1H), 0.88 (s, 9H), 0.21 (s, 3H), 0.10 (s, 3H); FTIR (neat),
cm⁻¹: 2931 (m), 2859 (m), 1734 (s), 1695 (s), 1479 (s), 1186 (s), 733 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for
(C₄₈H₅₄N₂O₈Si + H)⁺: 831.3677; Found: 831.3682.
Michael adduct 47.

A freshly prepared solution of lithium diisopropylamide in tetrahydrofuran (1.4 M, 444 μL, 0.622 mmol, 3 equiv) was added dropwise via syringe to a solution of phthalide 46 (170 mg, 0.642 mmol, 3.1 equiv) in tetrahydrofuran (0.5 mL) at −78 °C in a dry ice–acetone cooling bath, forming a dark orange solution. The solution was stirred at −78 °C for 45 min. AB enone 6 (100 mg, 0.207 mmol, 1 equiv) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (0.5 mL) and added slowly to the reaction mixture. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to −10 °C over 90 min before aqueous potassium phosphate buffer solution (pH 7.0, 6 mL) was added. Ethyl acetate (5 mL) was added and the layers were separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (2 × 10 mL). The combined organic extracts were dried over sodium sulfate. The dried solution was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated. The residue was purified by flash-column chromatography (20→50% ethyl acetate–hexanes) to provide the Michael adduct 47 (92 mg, 59%) as a light yellow foam. Crystals were grown from slow evaporation of a dichloromethane-hexanes solvent system and X-ray crystallographic analysis was performed in order to determine absolute stereochemistry of the Michael adduct, specifically determining the configuration of the C5a and C6 stereocenters. TLC: (20% ethyl acetate–hexanes) Rf = 0.45 (UV, CAM); 1H NMR (600 MHz, CDCl3) δ: 7.67 (t, 1H, J = 7.8 Hz), 7.48–7.47 (m, 2H), 7.40–7.37 (m, 2H), 7.35–7.33 (m, 1H), 7.23 (d, 1H, J = 7.8 Hz), 7.14 (d, 1H, J = 7.8 Hz), 5.37 (s, 2H), 3.49 (d, 1H, J = 3.7 Hz),
2.61–2.53 (m, 2H), 2.44 (s, 6H), 2.21–2.15 (m, 2H), 2.13–2.10 (m, 1H), 1.66 (s, 3H), 1.58 (s, 10H), 0.82 (s, 9H), 0.12 (s, 3H), −0.11 (s, 3H); $^{13}$C NMR (125 MHz, CDCl$_3$) δ: 204.3, 187.2, 179.9, 167.8, 165.9, 153.5, 150.4, 149.1, 136.3, 135.0, 128.5, 128.5, 128.2, 122.6, 118.4, 118.1, 106.6, 86.9, 85.2, 84.9, 72.5, 64.3, 47.0, 43.5, 43.2, 39.9, 29.1, 27.6, 26.0, 24.2, 19.1, 11.4, −2.9, −3.0; FTIR (neat), cm$^{-1}$: 2934 (m), 1763 (s), 1233 (s), 1146 (s), 729 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C$_{40}$H$_{50}$N$_2$O$_{10}$Si + H)$^+$: 747.3313; Found: 747.3278.
Diol 75.

Alcohol 43 (3.14 g, 6.90 mmol, 1 equiv) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (69 mL) in a polypropylene reaction tube. Excess triethylamine trihydrofluoride (11.2 mL, 68.9 mmol, 10 equiv) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred at 23 °C for 16 h. The reaction mixture was quenched with the addition of an aqueous potassium phosphate buffer solution (pH 7.0, 90 mL). Ethyl acetate (150 mL) was added and the layers were separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (2 × 100 mL). The organic layers were combined and were washed with saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution (200 mL). The washed solution was dried over sodium sulfate and the dried solution was filtered. The filtrate was concentrated to provide diol 75 (2.35 g) as an orange foam in quantitative yield. The crude material was carried forward without further purification.\(^6^4\) TLC: (50% ethyl acetate–hexanes) \(R_f = 0.29\) (UV, CAM). \(^1\)H NMR (600 MHz, CDCl\(_3\)) \(\delta: 7.48–7.46\) (m, 2H), 7.39–7.33 (m, 3H), 7.03–7.00 (m, 1H), 6.26–6.24 (m, 1H), 5.57 (d, 1H, \(J = 5.3\) Hz), 5.36 (s, 2H), 4.57 (s, 1H), 3.14 (dt, 1 H, \(J = 10.9\) Hz, 5.5 Hz), 2.90–2.85 (m, 1H), 2.65 (br s, 1 H), 2.37–2.31 (m, 1H). HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C\(_{18}\)H\(_{15}\)NO\(_6\) + H): 342.0972; Found: 342.0989.

---

\(^6^4\) Attempts to purify this alcohol by flash-column chromatography resulted in the formation of an unwanted cyclic ether, the byproduct of the addition of the C4-alcohol into the enone.
Tosylate 81.

Diol 75 (100 mg, 0.29 mmol, 1 equiv) and DABCO (66 mg, 0.58 mmol, 2 equiv) were dissolved in dichloromethane (2.9 mL) and the homogeneous reaction mixture was placed in an ice-water cooling bath. p-Tosyl chloride (84 mg, 0.44 mmol, 1.5 equiv) was added portion-wise over 5 minutes and the reaction mixture continued to stir at 0 °C for 1 h. The reaction mixture was diluted with ether (10 mL) and filtered through a pad of Celite, rinsing with an additional portion of ether (10 mL). The ethereal filtrate was washed sequentially with a 2M hydrochloric acid solution (2 × 30 mL), a saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution (2 × 30 mL), and water (30 mL). The organic phase was dried over sodium sulfate and the dried solution was filtered. The filtrate was concentrated and the yellow oily residue was purified by flash-column chromatography on silica gel (30→40% ethyl acetate–hexanes) to provide tosylate 81 (122 mg, 84%) as white foam. TLC: (50% ethyl acetate–hexanes) Rf = 0.67 (UV, CAM); 1H NMR (600 MHz, CDCl₃) δ: 7.93–7.91 (m, 2H), 7.43 (d, 4H, J = 7.3 Hz), 7.37–7.33 (m, 3H), 7.01–6.98 (m, 1H), 6.24 (dt, 1H, J = 10.2 Hz, 1.4 Hz), 6.05 (d, 1H, J = 5.9 Hz), 5.31 (s, 2H), 4.57 (s, 1H), 3.36 (dt, 1 H, J = 10.2 Hz, 5.5 Hz), 2.95–2.90 (m, 1H), 2.49 (s, 3H), 2.44–2.37 (m, 1H).
Boc bis-carbonate 82.

Crude diol 75 (2.64 g, 7.73 mmol, 1 equiv) was dissolved in dichloromethane (77 mL) and the reaction flask was placed in a 0 °C ice-water cooling bath. Triethylamine (3.23 mL, 23.2 mmol, 3 equiv) and dimethylaminopyridine (0.250 g, 2.07 mmol, 0.3 equiv) were added sequentially, followed by di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (3.59 mL, 15.5 mmol, 2 equiv). The cooling bath was removed and the reaction mixture was stirred at 23 °C for 5 minutes. The reaction mixture was concentrated and purified by flash-column chromatography (20→30% ethyl acetate–hexanes) to provide Boc bis-carbonate 82 (3.24 g, 77%) as a light yellow foam. TLC: (30% ethyl acetate–hexanes) Rf = 0.47 (UV, CAM); 1H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl3) δ: 7.45 (d, 2H, J = 7.3 Hz), 7.38–7.33 (m, 3H), 6.87 (ddd, 1H, J = 10.3 Hz, 5.9 Hz, 2.4 Hz), 6.23 (d, 1H, J = 5.4 Hz), 6.20 (dd, 1H, J = 10.3 Hz, 2.4 Hz), 5.35 (s, 2H), 4.10–4.06 (m, 1H), 2.83–2.76 (m, 1H), 2.42–2.35 (m, 1H), 1.54 (s, 9H), 1.49 (s, 9H); FTIR (neat), cm⁻¹: 2982 (m), 1751 (s), 1724 (s), 1274 (s), 1251 (s), 731 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C28H31NO10 + Na)+: 564.1840; Found: 564.1835.
Epimerization of the Boc bis-carbonate 82 to Boc bis-carbonate 83.

Boc bis-carbonate 82 (2.47 g, 4.56 mmol, 1 equiv) was dissolved in benzene (250 mL) in a 500-mL round-bottom flask. Argon was bubbled through the solution for 60 min before 1,8-diazabicycloundec-7-ene (0.34 mL, 2.28 mmol, 0.5 equiv) was added. Within the first minute, the reaction mixture darkened to yellow in color. After 15 min, saturated aqueous ammonium chloride solution (200 mL) was added and the layers were separated. The aqueous phase was extracted with ethyl acetate (3 × 150 mL). The combined organic extracts were washed with saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution (400 mL) and the washed extracts were dried over sodium sulfate. The dried organic phase was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated. The crude material was purified by flash-column chromatography (10→30% ethyl acetate–hexanes) to recover the starting material (866 mg, 35%) and to provide the C4-epimerized Boc bis-carbonate 83 (1.30 g, 53%) as a yellow foam. TLC: (30% ethyl acetate–hexanes) R_f = 0.40 (UV, CAM);

^1_H NMR (600 MHz, CDCl3) δ: 7.47 (d, 2H, J = 7.3 Hz), 7.39–7.33 (m, 3H), 6.91–6.89 (m, 1H), 6.24–6.22 (m, 1H), 5.78 (d, 1H, J = 5.0 Hz), 5.35 (s, 2H), 4.07–4.05 (m, 1H), 2.84–2.79 (m, 1H), 2.42–2.38 (m, 1H), 1.51 (s, 9H), 1.49 (s, 9H); FTIR (neat), cm⁻¹: 2982 (m), 1751 (s), 1724 (s), 1283 (s), 1254 (s), 731 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C_{28}H_{31}NO_{10} + Na)^+: 564.1840; Found: 564.1839.
Diol 76.

C4-epimerized Boc bis-carbonate 83 (1.30 g, 2.40 mmol, 1 equiv) was dissolved in dichloromethane (24 mL) at 23 °C. Trifluoroacetic acid (1.85 mL, 24.0 mmol, 10 equiv) was added slowly and the reaction mixture continued to stir at 23 °C as consumption of starting material was monitored by TLC. When no starting material remained, saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution (20 mL) was added carefully and the layers were separated. The aqueous phase was extracted with dichloromethane (3 × 15 mL). The combined organic extracts were washed sequentially with water (50 mL) and saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution (50 mL). The washed extracts were dried over sodium sulfate, the dried organic phase was filtered, and the filtrate was concentrated. The crude material was purified by flash-column chromatography (20→50% ethyl acetate–hexanes) to provide the C4-epimerized diol 76 (645 mg, 79%) as a yellow solid. TLC: (50% ethyl acetate–hexanes) Rf = 0.30 (UV, CAM); 1H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl3) δ: 7.49–7.47 (m, 2H), 7.40–7.34 (m, 3H), 6.95 (ddd, 1H, J = 10.2 Hz, 5.2 Hz, 2.7 Hz), 6.27–6.24 (m, 1H), 5.37 (s, 2H), 4.89 (br s, 1H), 4.70 (d, 1H, J = 10.2 Hz), 3.67 (br s, 1H), 3.04–3.02 (m, 1H), 2.80–2.74 (m, 1H), 2.30 (br s, 1H); FTIR (neat), cm⁻¹: 3462 (br), 3314 (br), 2934 (m), 1709 (s), 1514 (s), 735 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C₁₈H₁₅NO₆ + H)⁺: 342.0972; Found: 342.0988.
AB enone 71.

A 50-mL round-bottom flask equipped with a stir bar was charged with diol 76 (846 mg, 2.48 mmol, 1 equiv), dichloromethane (12 mL), and 2,6-lutidine (0.866 mL, 7.44 mmol, 3 equiv) and was placed in a 0 °C ice-water cooling bath. tert-Butyldimethylsilyl trifluoromethane-sulfonate (1.42 mL, 6.20 mmol, 2.5 equiv) was added dropwise by syringe to the ice-cooled solution. After 10 minutes, the cooling bath was removed and the reaction mixture was allowed to warm to 23 °C. After 10 minutes at 23 °C, the reaction flask was fitted with a reflux condenser and placed in a preheated 40 °C oil bath. After 3 h at 40 °C, the reaction flask was removed from the oil bath and methanol (40 mL) was added. The quenched reaction mixture continued to stir at 23 °C for 20 minutes before ethyl acetate (30 mL) and water (30 mL) were added. The layers were separated and the aqueous phase was extracted with ethyl acetate (3 × 30 mL). The combined organic extracts were washed with saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution (90 mL) and the washed extracts were dried over sodium sulfate. The dried organic phase was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated. The crude material was purified by flash-column chromatography (2→6% ethyl acetate–hexanes) to provide the AB enone 71 (1.23 g, 87%) as a white foam. TLC: (40% ethyl acetate–hexanes) Rf = 0.71 (UV, CAM); 1H NMR (600 MHz, CDCl3) δ: 7.50 (d, 1H, J = 6.7 Hz), 7.40–7.33 (m, 3H), 6.93–6.91 (m, 1H), 6.15 (dd, 1H, J = 10.3 Hz, 2.9 Hz), 5.37 (s, 2H), 4.79 (d, 1H, J = 9.7 Hz), 2.97–2.92 (m, 1H), 2.91–2.88 (m, 1H), 2.65–2.61 (m, 1H), 0.94 (s, 9H), 0.83 (s, 9H), 0.23 (s, 6H), 0.13 (s, 3H), 0.08 (s, 3H);
$^{13}$C NMR (125 MHz, CDCl$_3$) $\delta$: 193.0, 187.0, 179.5, 167.5, 147.8, 134.9, 129.1, 128.5, 128.5, 128.4, 106.1, 83.1, 72.4, 64.5, 53.2, 26.0, 25.6, 24.8, 19.0, 18.0, –2.6, –4.0, –4.4, –4.9; FTIR (neat), cm$^{-1}$: 3036 (m), 2930 (m), 2859 (m), 1721 (s), 1512 (s), 1063 (s), 837 (s), 731 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C$_{30}$H$_{43}$NO$_6$Si$_2$ + H)$^+$: 570.2702; Found: 570.2695.
Michael-Claisen cyclization product 85.

A freshly prepared solution of lithium diisopropylamide in tetrahydrofuran (1.0 M, 2.63 mL, 2.63 mmol, 3 equiv) was added dropwise via syringe to a solution of phenyl ester 84 (978 mg, 2.63 mmol, 3 equiv) in tetrahydrofuran (20 mL) at –78 °C in a dry ice–acetone cooling bath, forming a bright red solution. The solution was stirred at –78 °C for 20 min. AB enone 71 (500 mg, 0.877 mmol, 1 equiv) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (8 mL) and was added slowly to the reaction mixture over 5 minutes. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to –10 °C over 90 min before aqueous potassium phosphate buffer solution (pH 7.0, 30 mL) was added. Ethyl acetate (20 mL) was added and the layers were separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (3 × 50 mL). The combined organic extracts were dried over sodium sulfate. The dried solution was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated. The residue was purified by flash-column chromatography (2→15% ethyl acetate–hexanes) to provide the Michael-Claisen product 85 (657 mg, 88%) as a light yellow foam. TLC: (20% ethyl acetate–hexanes) R_f = 0.50 (UV, CAM); _1^H NMR (600 MHz, CDCl_3) δ: 15.87 (br s, 1H), 7.49 (d, 2H, J = 7.5 Hz), 7.40–7.32 (m, 3H), 7.22 (d, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.03 (d, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz), 5.41–5.37 (m, 2H), 4.84 (d, 1H, J = 5.7 Hz), 3.35–3.31 (m, 1H), 2.94–2.91 (m, 1H), 2.65 (s, 6H), 2.36–2.31 (m, 2H), 1.79–1.77 (m, 1H), 1.56 (s, 9H), 0.96 (s, 9H), 0.89–0.84 (m, 1H), 0.77 (s, 9H), 0.26 (s, 3H), 0.23 (s, 3H).
$^{13}$C NMR (125 MHz, CDCl$_3$) δ: 187.4, 184.0, 181.4, 178.3, 167.7, 152.1, 149.2, 145.3, 136.8, 135.1, 129.2, 128.5, 128.2, 124.1, 123.7, 122.0, 121.9, 107.9, 105.7, 83.7, 81.2, 72.3, 67.3, 50.8, 44.2, 33.3, 30.4, 27.7, 27.5, 25.9, 25.8, 19.0, 18.5 –3.2, –3.4, –4.2, –4.5; FTIR (neat), cm$^{-1}$: 2932 (m), 2859 (m), 1759 (s), 1512 (s), 1236 (s), 1142 (s), 835 (s), 729 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for $(C_{45}H_{62}N_2O_{10}Si_2 + H)^+$: 847.4016; Found: 847.4051.
C4-dedimethylamino-C4-hydroxyminocycline (86).

Concentrated aqueous hydrofluoric acid solution (48 wt%, 1 mL) was added to a solution of the Michael-Claisen cyclization product 85 (13 mg, 15 μmol, 1 equiv) in acetonitrile (1 mL) in a polypropylene reaction vessel at 23 °C. The reaction vessel was then placed in a 35 °C oil heating bath for 20 h. Upon removal from the heating bath and cooling to 23 °C, the reaction mixture was poured into water (17 mL) containing dipotassium hydrogen phosphate trihydrate (3.3 g). The resulting mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate (4 × 20 mL). The organic extracts were combined and the combined solution was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The dried solution was filtered and the filtered solution was concentrated, affording a yellow solid. Methanol (1 mL) and 1,4-dioxane (1 mL) were added to the crude product, forming a yellow solution. Palladium black (5.7 mg, 54 μmol, 3.5 equiv) was added in one portion at 23 °C. An atmosphere of hydrogen gas was introduced by briefly evacuating the flask, then backfilling with hydrogen (1 atm). The reaction mixture was stirred at 23 °C for 1 h, then was filtered through a cotton plug. The filtrate was concentrated, affording a yellow oil. The product was purified by reverse-phase HPLC (Agilent Extend-C18, 95:5→60:40 water–acetonitrile + 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid) to afford C4-dedimethylamino-C4-hydroxyminocycline (86, 4.0 mg, 60% over 2 steps). \(^1\)H NMR (600 MHz, CD\textsubscript{3}OD) δ: 7.73 (d, 1H, \(J = 9.0\) Hz), 6.97 (d, 1H, \(J = 9.0\) Hz), 4.24 (d, 1H, \(J = 7.1\) Hz), 3.26–3.22 (m, 1H), 3.07 (s, 7H), 2.66 (t, 1H, \(J = 14.8\) Hz), 2.46 (td, 1H,
\( J = 7.3 \text{ Hz, } 4.2 \text{ Hz}, \) 2.37–2.34 (m, 1H), 1.87–1.86 (m, 1H); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C\(_{21}\)H\(_{22}\)N\(_2\)O\(_8\) + H\(^+\))\(^+\): 431.1449; Found: 431.1466.
Intermediate 87.

Concentrated aqueous hydrofluoric acid solution (48 wt%, 10 mL) was added to a solution of the Michael–Claisen cyclization product 85 (147 mg, 0.174 mmol, 1 equiv) in acetonitrile (12 mL) in a polypropylene reaction vessel at 23 °C. The reaction vessel was then placed in a 35 °C oil heating bath for 48 h. Additional concentrated aqueous hydrofluoric acid solution (48 wt%, 2 mL) was added and stirring continued at 35 °C oil bath for an additional 24 h. Upon removal from the heating bath and cooling to 23 °C, the reaction mixture was poured into a half saturated aqueous dipotassium hydrogen phosphate solution (75 mL). Additional water was added to dissolve the precipitate. The resulting mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate (4 × 50 mL). The organic extracts were combined and the combined solution was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The dried solution was filtered and the filtered solution was concentrated, affording a yellow solid. The product was purified by reverse-phase HPLC (Agilent Extend-C18, 30:70→0:100 water–methanol) to afford intermediate 87 (65 mg, 72%). $^1$H NMR (600 MHz, CDCl$_3$) δ: 14.92 (br s, 1H), 11.26 (s, 1H), 7.49 (d, 2H, $J$ = 7.3 Hz), 7.40–7.34 (m, 3H), 7.31 (d, 1H, $J$ = 8.8 Hz), 6.82 (d, 1H, $J$ = 8.8 Hz), 5.41–5.37 (m, 2H), 4.70 (dd, 1H, $J$ = 11.3 Hz, 1.9 Hz), 4.32 (br s, 1H), 3.70 (d, 1H, $J$ = 11.3 Hz), 3.36 (dd, 1H, $J$ = 14.5 Hz, 4.5 Hz), 2.92–2.88 (m, 1H), 2.85 (dt, 1H, $J$ = 14.5 Hz, 1.9 Hz), 2.56 (s, 6H), 2.13–2.07 (m, 2H), 1.38–1.31 (m, 1H); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C$_{28}$H$_{26}$N$_2$O$_8$ + H)$^+$: 519.1762; Found: 519.1767.
C4-dedimethylamino-C4-methoxyminocycline precursor 88.

Trimethyloxonium tetrafluoroborate (1.4 mg, 9.6 μmol, 1 equiv) and 1,8-diaminonaphthalene (1.5 mg, 9.6 μmol, 1.0 equiv) were added to a solution of the intermediate 87 (5.0 mg, 9.6 μmol, 1 equiv) in dichloromethane (0.1 mL) at 23 °C. The reaction mixture was stirred at 23 °C for 2 h before methanol (0.5 mL) and water (0.5 mL) were added to quench the reaction. A reverse-phase HPLC sample was prepared directly from the reaction mixture and was purified (Agilent Extend-C18, 30:70→0:100 water–methanol) to afford C4-methyl ether 88 (4.0 mg, 78%) as a yellow solid. \(^1\)H NMR (600 MHz, CDCl\(_3\)) \(\delta\): 12.67 (s, 1H), 7.51–7.48 (m, 2H), 7.41–7.35 (m, 3H), 7.29 (d, 1H, \(J = 8.9 \text{ Hz}\)), 6.84 (d, 1H, \(J = 8.9 \text{ Hz}\)), 5.40 (s, 2H), 4.66 (br s, 1H), 4.41 (br s, 1H), 3.99 (s, 3H), 3.82 (br s, 1H), 3.35 (dd, 1H, \(J = 16.1 \text{ Hz}, 4.0 \text{ Hz}\)), 3.02–2.96 (m, 1H), 2.78 (d, 1H, \(J = 14.0 \text{ Hz}\)), 2.57 (s, 6H), 2.21 (dd, 1H, \(J = 15.9 \text{ Hz}, 12.5 \text{ Hz}\)), 2.08–2.05 (m, 1H); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C\(_{29}\)H\(_{28}\)N\(_2\)O\(_8\) + H): 533.1918; Found: 533.1927.
C4-dedimethylamino-C4-methoxyminocycline (89).

![Chemical structures](image)

Methanol (1 mL) and 1,4-dioxane (1 mL) were added to the C4-methyl ether 88 (4.0 mg, 7.5 μmol, 1 equiv), forming a yellow solution. Palladium black (2.8 mg, 26 μmol, 3.5 equiv) was added in one portion at 23 °C. An atmosphere of hydrogen gas was introduced by briefly evacuating the flask, then backfilling with hydrogen (1 atm). The reaction mixture was stirred at 23 °C for 1 h, then was filtered through a cotton plug. The filtrate was concentrated, affording a yellow film. The product was purified by reverse-phase HPLC (Agilent Extend-C18, 95:5→60:40 water–acetonitrile + 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid) to afford C4-dedimethylamino-C4-methoxyminocycline (89, 2.5 mg, 75%). HRMS (ESI): Caled for (C_{22}H_{24}N_{2}O_{8} + H)^+: 445.1605; Found: 445.1615.
Michael-Claisen cyclization product 90.

A freshly prepared solution of lithium diisopropylamide in tetrahydrofuran (1.0 M, 484 μL, 0.484 mmol, 3 equiv) was added dropwise via syringe to a solution of phenyl ester 44 (175 mg, 0.484 mmol, 3 equiv) in tetrahydrofuran (3.5 mL) at –78 °C in a dry ice–acetone cooling bath, forming a bright red solution. The solution was stirred at –78 °C for 20 min. AB enone 71 (92 mg, 0.161 mmol, 1 equiv) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (1 mL) and was added slowly to the reaction mixture over 2 minutes. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to –10 °C over 60 min before aqueous potassium phosphate buffer solution (pH 7.0, 10 mL) was added. Ethyl acetate (15 mL) was added and the layers were separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (3 × 10 mL). The combined organic extracts were dried over sodium sulfate. The dried solution was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated. The residue was purified by flash-column chromatography (2→20% ethyl acetate–hexanes) to provide the Michael-Claisen product 90 (44 mg, 33%) as a light yellow foam. TLC: (20% ethyl acetate–hexanes) $R_f = 0.40$ (UV, CAM); $^1$H NMR (600 MHz, CDCl$_3$) δ: 16.32 (s, 1H), 7.55 (d, 4H, $J = 7.3$ Hz), 7.39–7.34 (m, 5H), 7.31–7.29 (m, 1H), 7.15 (d, 1H, $J = 8.8$ Hz), 6.87 (d, 1H, $J = 8.8$ Hz), 5.42–5.37 (m, 2H), 5.23–5.14 (m, 2H), 4.82 (d, 1H, $J = 5.0$ Hz), 3.36–3.34 (m, 1H), 2.87–2.82 (m, 1H), 2.65–2.62 (m, 1H), 2.61 (s, 6H), 2.30–2.22 (m, 2H), 1.73–1.69 (m, 1H), 0.96 (s, 9H), 0.76
(s, 9H), 0.25 (s, 3H), 0.21 (s, 3H), 0.17 (s, 3H), 0.15 (s, 3H); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for 
(C_{47}H_{60}N_{2}O_{8}Si_{2} + H)^{+}: 837.3966; Found: 837.3890.
Differentially deprotected intermediates 95 and 96.

Triethylamine trihydrofluoride (50 μL, 0.31 mmol, 6.6 equiv) was added to a solution of the Michael–Claisen cyclization product 90 (39 mg, 47 μmol, 1 equiv) in tetrahydrofuran (1 mL) in a polypropylene reaction vessel at 23 °C. After 16 h at 23 °C, aqueous potassium phosphate buffer solution (pH 7.0, 2 mL) was added. Ethyl acetate (2 mL) was added and the layers were separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (2 × 3 mL). The combined organic extracts were washed with saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution (10 mL) and the washed extracts were dried over sodium sulfate. The dried organic phase was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated, affording a yellow solid. The crude material was purified by reverse-phase HPLC (Agilent Extend-C18, 30:70→0:100 water–methanol) to afford silyl intermediate 95 (14 mg, 42%) and desilylated intermediate 96 (6 mg, 21%).

**Silyl intermediate 95**: 1H NMR (600 MHz, CDCl₃) δ: 16.59 (s, 1H), 7.53–7.48 (m, 4H), 7.40–7.30 (m, 6H), 7.16 (d, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz), 6.88 (d, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz), 5.44–5.38 (m, 2H), 5.24 (d, 1H, J = 12.5 Hz), 5.15 (d, 1H, J = 12.5 Hz), 4.63 (dd, 1H, J = 10.9 Hz, 1.5 Hz), 3.90 (d, 1H, J = 10.9 Hz), 3.23–3.21 (m, 1H), 2.81–2.78 (m, 1H), 2.57 (br s, 6H), 2.08–2.04 (m, 2H), 1.35–1.29 (m, 1H), 0.74 (s, 9H), 0.26 (s, 3H), 0.16 (s, 3H); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C₄₁H₄₆N₂O₈Si + H)⁺: 723.3096; Found: 723.3106.

**Desilylated intermediate 96**: 1H NMR (600 MHz, CDCl₃) δ: 16.02 (s, 1H), 7.51–7.48 (m, 4H), 7.40–7.30 (m, 6H), 7.19 (d, 1H, J = 8.9 Hz), 6.91 (d, 1H, J = 8.9 Hz), 5.41–5.37 (m, 2H), 5.22
(d, 1H, $J = 12.1$ Hz), 5.13 (d, 1H, $J = 12.1$ Hz), 4.79 (br s, 1 H), 4.70 (s, 1H), 3.25 (dd, 1H, $J = 15.6$, 4.1 Hz), 2.81 (dt, 1H, $J = 13.5$, 1.9 Hz), 2.78–2.73 (m, 1H), 2.59 (s, 6H), 2.11–2.05 (m, 2H), 1.36–1.33 (m, 2H); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C$_{35}$H$_{32}$N$_2$O$_8$ + H)$^+$: 609.2237; Found: 609.2194.
Protected salicylate 97.

4-Dimethylaminopyridine (4.7 mg, 39 μmol, 4 equiv) and commercially available 2-benzyloxybenzoyl chloride (4.8 mg, 19 μmol, 2 equiv) were dissolved in dichloromethane (50 μL) at 23 °C. A solution of intermediate 95 (7.0 mg, 9.7 μmol, 1 equiv) in dichloromethane (0.2 mL) was added and the reaction mixture continued to stir at 23 °C for 3 h. The reaction mixture was concentrated, loaded onto a column, and purified via flash-column chromatography (5→30% ethyl acetate–hexanes) to provide the salicylate ester 97 (8.0 mg, 89%) as a light yellow foam. This material was carried forward without further purification.
C4-dedimethylamino-C4-salicyloxyminocycline (91).

Concentrated aqueous hydrofluoric acid solution (48 wt%, 1 mL) was added to a solution of the salicylate ester 97 (8.0 mg, 8.6 μmol, 1 equiv) in acetonitrile (1 mL) in a polypropylene reaction vessel at 23 °C. The reaction vessel was then placed in a 35 °C oil heating bath for 20 h. Upon removal from the heating bath and cooling to 23 °C, the reaction mixture was poured into water (17 mL) containing dipotassium hydrogen phosphate trihydrate (3.3 g). The resulting mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate (4 × 20 mL). The organic extracts were combined and the combined solution was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The dried solution was filtered and the filtered solution was concentrated, affording a yellow solid. Methanol (1 mL) and 1,4-dioxane (1 mL) were added to the crude product, forming a yellow solution. Palladium black (3.9 mg, 30 μmol, 3.5 equiv) was added in one portion at 23 °C. An atmosphere of hydrogen gas was introduced by briefly evacuating the flask, then backfilling with hydrogen (1 atm). The reaction mixture was stirred at 23 °C for 3 h, then was filtered through a cotton plug. The filtrate was concentrated, affording a yellow oil. It was determined at this point that there was incomplete deprotection of the C12a silyl ether and therefore the crude material was dissolved in acetonitrile (1 mL) in a polypropylene reaction and additional concentrated aqueous hydrofluoric acid solution (48 wt%, 1 mL) was added at 23 °C. The reaction vessel was then placed in a 40 °C oil heating bath for 48 h. Upon removal from the heating bath and cooling to 23 °C, acetonitrile
(3 mL) was added, followed by excess methoxytrimethylsilane (4.0 mL) to quench the hydrofluoric acid. The reaction mixture was concentrated and the residue was purified by reverse-phase HPLC (Agilent Extend-C18, 95:5→60:40 water–acetonitrile + 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid) to afford C4-dedimethylamino-C4-salicyloxyminocycline (91, 3.5 mg, 74% over 3 steps). $^1$H NMR (600 MHz, CD$_3$OD) $\delta$: 7.96 (dd, 1H, $J = 7.9$ Hz, 1.8 Hz), 7.74 (d, 1H, $J = 9.4$ Hz), 7.55–7.52 (m, 1H), 7.00–6.95 (m, 3H), 5.79 (d, 1H, $J = 6.7$ Hz), 3.16 (dd, 1H, $J = 15.5$ Hz, 4.7 Hz), 3.06 (s, 6H), 2.80 (br s, 1H), 2.66–2.62 (m, 1H), 2.53–2.49 (m, 1H), 1.94 (s, 1H), 1.33 (br s, 1H); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C$_{28}$H$_{26}$N$_2$O$_{10}$ + H)$^+$: 551.1660; Found: 551.1672.
Acetate 98.

Desilylated intermediate 96 (6.0 mg, 9.9 μmol, 1 equiv) was dissolved in a 1:1 mixture of dichloromethane:pyridine (0.1 mL) and placed in an ice-water cooling bath. Acetic anhydride (1.0 μL, 11 μmol, 1.1 equiv) was added and the reaction mixture was slowly warmed to 23 °C. After 12 h at 23 °C, an additional portion of acetic anhydride (10 μL) was added. Upon complete consumption of starting material indicated by TLC, water (2 mL) and ethyl acetate (2 mL) were added. The layers were separated and the aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (2 × 3 mL). The combined organic extracts were washed with saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution (10 mL) and the washed extracts were dried over sodium sulfate. The dried organic phase was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated, affording a yellow solid. The crude material was purified by reverse-phase HPLC (Agilent Extend-C18, 30:70→0:100 water–methanol) to afford acetate 98 (5.4 mg, 84%). 1H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl3) δ: 16.11 (s, 1H), 7.49 (t, 4H, J = 8.5 Hz), 7.40–7.36 (m, 5H), 7.31–7.29 (m, 1H), 7.19 (d, 1H, J = 9.2 Hz), 6.90 (d, 1H, J = 9.2 Hz), 5.95 (d, 1H, J = 2.7 Hz), 5.41–5.36 (m, 2H), 5.22 (d, 1H, J = 12.4 Hz), 5.13 (d, 1H, J = 12.4 Hz), 3.30–3.27 (m, 1H), 2.82–2.75 (m, 2H), 2.60 (s, 6H), 2.29–2.24 (m, 1H), 2.20 (s, 3H), 2.17–2.11 (m, 1H), 1.48–1.41 (m, 1H); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C37H34N2O9 + H)+: 651.2337; Found: 651.2329.
C4-dedimethylamino-C4-acetoxyminocycline (92).

Methanol (1 mL) and 1,4-dioxane (1 mL) were added to the acetate 98 (5.4 mg, 8.3 μmol, 1 equiv), forming a yellow solution. Palladium black (3.1 mg, 29 μmol, 3.5 equiv) was added in one portion at 23 °C. An atmosphere of hydrogen gas was introduced by briefly evacuating the flask, then backfilling with hydrogen (1 atm). The reaction mixture was stirred at 23 °C for 1 h, then was filtered through a cotton plug. The filtrate was concentrated, affording a yellow film. The residue was purified by reverse-phase HPLC (Agilent Extend-C18, 95:5→60:40 water–acetonitrile + 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid) to afford C4-dedimethylamino-C4-acetoxyminocycline (92, 3.1 mg, 79%). HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C_{23}H_{24}N_{2}O_{9} + H)^+: 473.1555; Found: 473.1574.
Alcohol 99.

Hydrogen fluoride–pyridine complex (~70% solution of HF in pyridine, 1 mL) was added to a solution of the Michael–Claisen cyclization product 85 (114 mg, 0.135 mmol, 1 equiv) in tetrahydrofuran (9 mL), containing additional pyridine (0.5 mL). After 23 h at 23 °C, the reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (20 mL). Saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution (20 mL) was added and the layers were separated. The organic layer was washed sequentially with additional portions of saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution (2 × 50 mL) and saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution (50 mL). The washed extracts were dried over sodium sulfate, the dried organic phase was filtered, and the filtrate was concentrated, affording a yellow solid. The crude material was purified by reverse-phase HPLC (Agilent Extend-C18, 30:70→0:100 water–methanol) to afford alcohol 99 (73 mg, 74%).¹ H NMR (600 MHz, CDCl₃) δ: 16.19 (br s, 1H), 7.49–7.47 (m, 2H), 7.39–7.32 (m, 3H), 7.20 (d, 1H, J = 8.7 Hz), 7.01 (d, 1H, J = 8.7 Hz), 5.43–5.37 (m, 2H), 4.64 (dd, 1H, J = 10.8 Hz, 1.7 Hz), 3.79 (d, 1H, J = 10.8 Hz), 3.18 (dd, 1H, J = 15.3 Hz, 4.1 Hz), 2.82–2.77 (m, 2H), 2.61 (s, 6H), 2.12 (t, 1H, J = 14.6 Hz), 1.57 (s, 9H), 1.39–1.31 (m, 1H), 0.74 (s, 9H), 0.21 (s, 3H), 0.13 (s, 3H); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C₃₉H₄₈N₂O₁₀Si + H)⁺: 733.3151; Found: 733.3132.
2-Bromoethyl ether 100.

Alcohol 99 (17 mg, 23 μmol, 1 equiv) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (0.3 mL) and placed in a dry ice–acetone cooling bath. A sodium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide solution in tetrahydrofuran (1.0 M, 56 μL, 56 μmol, 2.4 equiv) was added, followed by 2-bromoethyl triflate (10.1 mg, 39 μmol, 1.7 equiv) at −78 °C. Upon consumption of the starting material, aqueous potassium phosphate buffer solution (pH 7.0, 2 mL) was added followed by ethyl acetate (2 mL). The layers were separated and the aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (2 × 3 mL). The combined organic extracts were washed with saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution (10 mL) and the washed extracts were dried over sodium sulfate. The dried organic phase was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated, affording a yellow oil. The crude material was purified via flash-column chromatography (10→40% ethyl acetate–hexanes) to recover starting alcohol 99 (11 mg) and to provide the 2-bromoethyl ether 100 as a light yellow foam (6 mg, 30%). TLC: (20% ethyl acetate–hexanes) Rf = 0.50 (UV, CAM); 1H NMR (600 MHz, CDCl3) δ: 15.88 (br s, 1H), 7.49 (d, 2H, J = 7.3 Hz), 7.39–7.33 (m, 3H), 7.22 (d, 1H, J = 8.7 Hz), 7.03 (d, 1H, J = 8.7 Hz), 5.40–5.36 (m, 2H), 4.62 (d, 1H, J = 6.6 Hz), 4.49–4.46 (m, 1H), 3.92 (ddd, 1H, J = 10.6 Hz, 7.8 Hz, 5.6 Hz), 3.56–3.53 (m, 2H), 3.35 (dd, 1H, J = 15.5 Hz, 4.5 Hz), 2.97–2.92 (m, 1H), 2.78–2.76 (m, 1H), 2.65 (s, 6H), 2.39–2.33 (m, 2H), 1.95 (d, 1H, J = 13.5 Hz), 1.55 (s, 9H), 0.78 (s, 9H), 0.17 (s, 3H), 0.14 (s, 3H); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C41H51BrN2O10Si + H)+: 839.2569; Found: 839.2533.
2-dimethylaminoethyl ether 101.

2-Bromoethyl ether 100 (6.0 mg, 7.1 μmol, 1 equiv) was dissolved in methanol (1 mL). Approximately 1 mL of dimethylamine was condensed into the reaction flask by passage of a stream of dimethylamine gas over a coldfinger condenser. The coldfinger apparatus was then removed and the reaction flask was sealed with a yellow cap and Keck clip. The reaction mixture darkened to yellow and then green as it stirred for 16 h at 23 °C. The reaction mixture was then concentrated and the crude material was purified by reverse-phase HPLC (Agilent Extend-C18, 30:70→0:100 water–methanol) to afford 2-dimethylaminoethyl ether 101 (2 mg, 40%). HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C_{38}H_{49}N_{3}O_{8}Si + H)^+: 704.3367; Found: 704.3341.
C4-dedimethylamino-C4-(2-dimethylaminoethoxy)minocycline (93).

Concentrated aqueous hydrofluoric acid solution (48 wt%, 1 mL) was added to a solution of the 2-dimethylaminoethyl ether 101 (2.5 mg, 3.6 μmol, 1 equiv) in acetonitrile (1 mL) in a polypropylene reaction vessel at 23 °C. The reaction vessel was then placed in a 35 °C oil heating bath for 60 h. Upon removal from the heating bath and cooling to 23 °C, the reaction mixture was poured into water (17 mL) containing dipotassium hydrogen phosphate trihydrate (3.3 g). The resulting mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate (4 × 20 mL). The organic extracts were combined and the combined solution was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The dried solution was filtered and the filtered solution was concentrated, affording a yellow solid. Methanol (1 mL) and 1,4-dioxane (1 mL) were added to the crude product, forming a yellow solution. Palladium black (1.3 mg, 12 μmol, 3.5 equiv) was added in one portion at 23 °C. An atmosphere of hydrogen gas was introduced by briefly evacuating the flask, then backfilling with hydrogen (1 atm). The reaction mixture was stirred at 23 °C for 1 h, then was filtered through a cotton plug. The filtrate was concentrated, affording a yellow oil. The product was purified by reverse-phase HPLC (Agilent Extend-C18, 95:5→60:40 water–acetonitrile + 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid) to afford C4-dedimethylamino-C4-(2-dimethylaminoethoxy)minocycline (93, 1.0 mg, 50% over 2 steps). HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C_{32}H_{35}N_{3}O_{8} + H)^+: 590.2497; Found: 590.2495.
X-ray Crystallographic Laboratory Structure Report

Shao-Liang Zheng, Harvard University
X-Ray Crystallography

A crystal mounted on a diffractometer was collected data at 100 K. The intensities of the reflections were collected by means of a Bruker APEX II DUO CCD diffractometer (CuKα radiation, λ=1.54178 Å), and equipped with an Oxford Cryosystems nitrogen flow apparatus. The collection method involved 0.7° scans in ω at 30°, 68° and 105° in 2θ. Data integration down to 0.84 Å resolution was carried out using SAINT V7.46 A65 with reflection spot size optimization. Absorption corrections were made with the program SADABS.65 The structure was solved by the direct methods procedure and refined by least-squares methods again F² using SHELXS-97 and SHELXL-97.66 Non-hydrogen atoms were refined anisotropically, and hydrogen atoms were allowed to ride on the respective atoms. Crystal data as well as details of data collection and refinement are summarized in Table E1. The Ortep plots produced with SHELXL-97 program, and the other drawings were produced with Accelrys DS Visualizer 2.0.67

### Table E1: Experimental details.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Crystal data</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chemical formula</td>
<td>C\textsubscript{96}H\textsubscript{108}N\textsubscript{4}O\textsubscript{18}Si\textsubscript{2}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(M_r)</td>
<td>1662.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crystal system, space group</td>
<td>Orthorhombic, (P2_12_12_1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temperature (K)</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a, b, c) (Å)</td>
<td>14.7418 (4), 22.4564 (6), 26.8138 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(V) (Å(^3))</td>
<td>8876.6 (4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Z)</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiation type</td>
<td>Cu (K\alpha)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\mu) (mm(^{-1}))</td>
<td>0.94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crystal size (mm)</td>
<td>0.20 × 0.18 × 0.05</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data collection</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Diffractometer</td>
<td>CCD area detector diffractometer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Absorption correction</td>
<td>Multi-scan SADABS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(T_{\text{min}, \text{max}})</td>
<td>0.835, 0.955</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of measured, independent and observed [(I &gt; 2\sigma(I))] reflections</td>
<td>88849, 15376, 14708</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(R_{\text{int}})</td>
<td>0.055</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Refinement</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(R[F^2 &gt; 2\sigma(F^2)], wR(F^2), S)</td>
<td>0.053, 0.125, 1.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of reflections</td>
<td>15376</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of parameters</td>
<td>1091</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of restraints</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H-atom treatment</td>
<td>H-atom parameters constrained</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\Delta\rho_{\text{max}}, \Delta\rho_{\text{min}}) (e Å(^{-3}))</td>
<td>0.43, -0.51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flack parameter</td>
<td>0.03 (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Computer programs: \textit{APEX2 v2009.3.0} (Bruker-AXS, 2009), \textit{SAINT 7.46A} (Bruker-AXS, 2009), \textit{SHELXS97} (Sheldrick, 2008), \textit{SHELXL97} (Sheldrick, 2008), Bruker \textit{SHELXTL}.
Figure E1: Perspective views showing 50% probability displacement.

Figure E2: Three-dimensional supramolecular architecture viewed along the $a$-axis direction.
X-ray Crystallographic Laboratory Structure Report

Shao-Liang Zheng, Harvard University
X-Ray Crystallography

A crystal mounted on a diffractometer was collected data at 100 K. The intensities of the reflections were collected by means of a Bruker APEX II CCD along with the D8 Diffractometer (30 KeV, $\lambda = 0.413280$ Å), and equipped with an Oxford Cryosystems nitrogen open flow apparatus. The collection method involved 0.5° scans in Phi at -5° in 2θ. Data integration down to 0.82 Å resolution was carried out using SAINT V7.46 A with reflection spot size optimization. Absorption corrections were made with the program SADABS. The structure was solved by the direct methods procedure and refined by least-squares methods again $F^2$ using SHELXS-97 and SHELXL-97. Non-hydrogen atoms were refined anisotropically, and hydrogen atoms were allowed to ride on the respective atoms. Crystal data as well as details of data collection and refinement are summarized in Table E2. The Ortep plots produced with SHELXL-97 program, and the other drawings were produced with Accelrys DS Visualizer 2.0.

We thank Dr. Yu-Sheng Chen at ChemMatCARS, APS, for his assistance with single-crystal data. ChemMatCARS Sector 15 is principally supported by the National Science Foundation/Department of Energy under grant number NSF/CHE-0822838. Use of the Advanced Photon Source was supported by the U. S. Department of Energy, Office of Science, Office of Basic Energy Sciences, under Contract No. DE-AC02-06CH11357.

---

### Table E2: Experimental details.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Crystal data</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chemical formula</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$M_r$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Crystal system, space group</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Temperature (K)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$a$, $b$, $c$ (Å)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\beta$ (°)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$V$ (Å$^3$)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$Z$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Radiation type</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\mu$ (mm$^{-1}$)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Crystal size (mm)</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data collection</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Diffractometer</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Absorption correction</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$T_{\text{min}}, T_{\text{max}}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>No. of measured, independent and observed</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$[I &gt; 2\sigma(I)]$ reflections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$R_{\text{int}}$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Refinement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$R[F^2 &gt; 2\sigma(F^2)]$, $wR(F^2)$, $S$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>No. of reflections</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>No. of parameters</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>No. of restraints</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>H-atom treatment</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\Delta \rho_{\text{max}}, \Delta \rho_{\text{min}}$ (e Å$^{-3}$)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Flack parameter</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Computer programs: APEX2 v2009.3.0 (Bruker-AXS, 2009), SAINT 7.46A (Bruker-AXS, 2009), SHELXS97 (Sheldrick, 2008), SHELXL97 (Sheldrick, 2008), Bruker SHELXTL.
Figure E3: Perspective views showing 50% probability displacement.

Figure E4: Three-dimensional supramolecular architecture viewed along the $b$-axis direction.
Chapter 3

Pseudoephedrine Glycinamide as a Chiral Glycine Equivalent in Aldol Reactions
Introduction: β-Hydroxy-α-Amino Acids

β-Hydroxy-α-amino acids, common chiral building blocks, are frequently found in biologically relevant molecules, including a wide range of antibiotics (Figure 3.1). Broad-spectrum antibiotics (chloramphenicol and thiamphenicol)\textsuperscript{69} as well as antibacterials with specifically Gram-positive (solithromycin\textsuperscript{70} and vancomycin\textsuperscript{71}) or Gram-negative (aztreonam)\textsuperscript{72} activity feature either the β-hydroxy-α-amino acid motif itself or a derivative thereof. Antitumor antibiotic actinobolin\textsuperscript{73} and nucleoside antibacterial polyoxin B\textsuperscript{74} also contain the aforementioned scaffold.


Additionally, β,β’-disubstituted-β-hydroxy-α-amino acids, a type of non-proteinogenic amino acids, are often present in bioactive compounds, including fungicides,\textsuperscript{75} HIV reverse

transcriptase inhibitors,\textsuperscript{76} and β-lactam antibiotics.\textsuperscript{77} These non-canonical amino acids are also attractive substrates for the \textit{de novo} synthesis of peptides and peptidomimetics. Incorporation of the aforementioned amino acids into peptides results in greater conformational rigidity, which in turn provides enhanced activity and resistance to proteolytic degradation.\textsuperscript{78}

Overall, both β-hydroxy-α-amino acids and β,β’-disubstituted-β-hydroxy-α-amino acids are valuable targets due to their potential as chiral building blocks for chemical synthesis and their ubiquity in biologically significant systems.

\textbf{An Overview on Asymmetric Aldol Reactions with Glycine}

Historically, β-hydroxy-α-amino acids have been synthesized using various strategies, which can be divided into two general classes: (1) constructive transformations, which build the C–C bond between an α-carbon bearing a nitrogen substituent and a β-carbon bearing an oxygen substituent in a single operation (such as glycine aldol reactions), and (2) nonconstructive methodologies, which arrive at the desired functionality through alternate, generally less direct, means. Examples of nonconstructive strategies include Sharpless asymmetric aminohydroxylation of specific alkenyl esters,\textsuperscript{79} multistep reactions via Garner aldehyde-type


intermediates,\textsuperscript{80} asymmetric hydrogenation of α-amino-β-ketoesters,\textsuperscript{81} and others.\textsuperscript{82} Analyses of existing nonconstructive methodologies, as well as of chemoenzymatic glycine aldol reactions catalyzed by threonine aldolases\textsuperscript{83} and hydroxymethylations of alanine equivalents,\textsuperscript{84} are outside of the scope of this introduction.

A generic glycine aldol reaction is depicted in Scheme 3.1. A nucleophilic glycine enolate attacks an electrophilic carbonyl compound (aldehyde or ketone), affording a β-hydroxy-α-amino product in a single transformation. To impart asymmetry into these reactions, two strategies are primarily employed: (1) the use of a glycine equivalent derived from a chiral auxiliary, or (2) enantioselective catalysis.


Auxiliary Based Approaches

Two pioneering discoveries in the field of asymmetric glycine aldol reactions were disclosed by the Schöllkopf and Seebach research groups in the early to mid-1980s (Scheme 3.2). Bis(lactim) ether 109, a masked chiral glycine equivalent derived in 4 steps from L-valine, was reported to undergo tin-mediated aldol transformations with a variety of aldehydes (or ketones), to afford a range of syn-aldol products 110 (Scheme 3.2, A), usually as a single diastereomer. The bis(lactim) ether auxiliary was removed upon treatment with strong acid, revealing syn-β-hydroxy-α-amino esters 111. In some cases, the by-products of auxiliary cleavage complicated purification of the ester products.

Seebach’s imidazolidinone auxiliary 112 was prepared in two steps from glycine, methylamine, pivaldehyde, and benzoyl chloride. Treatment of this chiral glycine equivalent with LDA, followed by enolate trapping with an aldehyde (or acetone), provided syn-aldol adducts 113, with transposition of the benzoyl group onto the secondary alcohol (Scheme 3.2, B). Aldol adducts were obtained in high yields (≥75%) and good diastereoselectivities.


86 The ketones investigated were acetone, acetophenone and cyclohexanone. See Ref. 85a.

(≥86:14 syn:anti ratio). The auxiliary was cleaved under acidic conditions at elevated temperatures, liberating the syn-β-hydroxy-α-amino acids 114 in 54% to ≥98% yield.

A. Schöllkopf bis(lactim) ether auxiliary

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{CH}_3 & \quad \text{N} & \quad \text{OCH}_3 \\
\text{H}_3 & \quad \text{C} & \quad \text{N} & \quad \text{OCH}_3 \\
109 & & 1. n-\text{BuLi}, \text{OTf}(\text{NEt}_2)_3 & \quad 2. \text{RCHO}, -78 ^\circ \text{C}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{CH}_3 & \quad \text{N} & \quad \text{H} & \quad \text{OH} \\
\text{H}_3 & \quad \text{C} & \quad \text{N} & \quad \text{OCH}_3 \\
110 & & \text{acid (conc. HCl, TFA)} & \quad 23 ^\circ \text{C}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{H}_3 & \quad \text{C} & \quad \text{O} \\
111 & & \text{NH}_2 \\
\end{align*}
\]

B. Seebach imidazolidinone auxiliary

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{H}_3 & \quad \text{C} & \quad \text{C} & \quad \text{O} & \quad \text{N} \\
\text{H}_3 & \quad \text{C} & \quad \text{C} & \quad \text{O} & \quad \text{N} \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{Ph} & \quad \text{Ph} & \quad \text{Ph} & \quad \text{Ph} \\
112 & & 1. \text{LDA}, -78 ^\circ \text{C} & \quad 2. \text{RCHO}, -100 ^\circ \text{C}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{H}_3 & \quad \text{C} & \quad \text{C} & \quad \text{O} & \quad \text{N} \\
\text{H}_3 & \quad \text{C} & \quad \text{C} & \quad \text{O} & \quad \text{N} \\
\text{O} & \quad \text{Bz} & \quad \text{Bz} & \quad \text{Bz} & \quad \text{Bz} \\
113 & & \text{6 M HCl} & \quad 100 - 160 ^\circ \text{C}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{H}_3 & \quad \text{C} & \quad \text{O} \\
114 & & \text{NH}_2 \\
\end{align*}
\]

Scheme 3.2: Schöllkopf and Seebach methodologies.

Researchers at Bristol-Myers Squibb transformed glycine tert-butyl ester into chiral oxazolidine 115 in an attempt to impart diastereoselectivity on the aldol transformation (Scheme 3.3).\(^{88}\) Treatment of 115 with LDA, followed by the addition of an aldehyde (from a select subset of aliphatic and aromatic ones), afforded anti-aldol adducts 116 in ≥73% yield and good selectivities (≥90% major isomer). Cleavage of the oxazolidine and the tert-butyl ester in three steps provided the β-hydroxy-α-amino acids 117.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{t-BuO} & \quad \text{O} & \quad \text{N} & \quad \text{CH}(\text{Ph})_2 \\
\text{Ph} & \quad \text{Ph} & \quad \text{Ph} & \quad \text{Ph} \\
115 & & \text{LDA}, -78 ^\circ \text{C}, \text{then} & \quad \text{RCHO}, -78 ^\circ \text{C}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{t-BuO} & \quad \text{O} & \quad \text{N} & \quad \text{CH}(\text{Ph})_2 \\
\text{Ph} & \quad \text{Ph} & \quad \text{Ph} & \quad \text{Ph} \\
116 & & 1. \text{THF}:\text{H}_2\text{O}:\text{HCO}_2\text{H} & \quad (6:1:1)
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{H}_3 & \quad \text{C} & \quad \text{O} \\
117 & & \text{NH}_2 \\
\end{align*}
\]

Scheme 3.3: BMS glycine aldol reaction via oxazolidine 115.

The Evans research group applied their oxazolidinone chiral auxiliary in the synthesis of syn- and anti-β-hydroxy-α-amino acids via Lewis acid–mediated aldol reactions (Scheme 3.4). Tin-mediated aldol reaction using α-isothiocyanato acyl oxazolidinone 118 as a chiral glycine equivalent and aldehyde 119 afforded syn-thiocarbamate 120 (73%, dr 94:6; Scheme 3.4, A). The thiocarbamate effectively protected both of the syn-heteroatomic functionalities; however a multi-step sequence was necessary to convert 120 into methyl ester 123. Saponification of methyl ester 123 afforded amino acid 124, a component of the immunosuppressant cyclosporine.

To access anti-β-hydroxy-α-amino acids, α-chloro acyl oxazolidinone 125 was utilized as a chiral glycine equivalent in a boron mediated aldol reaction with acetaldehyde, affording syn-β-hydroxy-α-chloro intermediate 126 as a 95:5 mixture of diastereomers and the major diastereomer was isolated in 67% yield (Scheme 3.4, B). The chloride was displaced with sodium azide (thereby installing the amino functionality and inverting the stereochemical configuration of the α-center). The auxiliary was cleaved through basic hydrolysis with LiOH and the azide was reduced to the amine with H₂ and Pd/C, producing anti-β-hydroxy-α-amino acid 127 in 57% over the three steps.

---


90 This reaction is not in a strict sense a glycine aldol, but the desired β-hydroxy-α-amino acid motif was accessed. See: Evans, D. A.; Sjogren, E. B.; Weber, A. E. Conn, R. E. Tetrahedron Lett. 1987, 28, 39–42. Also, Corey and coworkers utilized a similar strategy for the synthesis of both syn- and anti-β-hydroxy-α-amino acids via an aldol reaction between an achiral α-bromo tert-butyl ester, an aldehyde, and a chiral boron catalyst (i.e. not by definition a glycine aldol). See Ref. 82j.
A. Evans syn-glycine aldol reaction

![Scheme 3.4: Evans syn- and anti-glycine aldol strategies with oxazolidinones.](image)

In addition to the oxazolidinone-based auxiliaries, related heterocycles have also been used to impart diastereoselectivity in Lewis acid–mediated aldol reactions (Scheme 3.5). Caddick and coworkers utilized an α-dibenzylamino acyl imidazolidinone 128 in a boron mediated aldolization with aldehydes (aliphatic, aromatic and heteroaromatic) to prepare syn-β-hydroxy-α-amino derivatives 129 (Scheme 3.5, A). The aldol adducts were isolated in 62 – 84% yield and ≥88% de, and were converted into syn-β-hydroxy-α-amino esters upon methanolysis of the auxiliary and reductive cleavage of the benzyl protecting groups. Franck and others demonstrated that tin-mediated aldolization with α-azido acyl thiazolidinithione 131 and a variety

---

of aldehydes provided syn-aldol adducts 133 in ≥60% yield and ≥98:2 dr (Scheme 3.5, B). Aldol adducts 133 were converted into the corresponding methyl esters 134 by treatment with imidazole in methanol. In some cases, auxiliary cleavage was accompanied by epimerization of the α-stereocenter.

A. Caddick imidazolidinone auxiliary

B. Franck thiazolidinthione auxiliary

Scheme 3.5: Additional oxazolidinone-related scaffold strategies.

Chiral auxiliaries have also been attached to imines to impart selectivity in asymmetric glycine aldol reactions. An example of this method was reported by Mukaiyama and others in 1981 (Scheme 3.6). Treatment of chiral imine 135 with CH₃MgI afforded a metal alkoxide 136. Deprotonation of 136 with KDA, addition of an aldehyde (predominantly aryl), and global silylation with TMSCl afforded syn-aldol adducts 137. Adducts 137 were converted into the N-Boc β-hydroxy-α-amino esters 138 upon reaction with aqueous acetic acid, followed by treatment with S-Boc-2-mercapto-4,6-dimethylpyrimidine (also known as Boc-S-reagent). The nature of the base for aldolization (KDA) was shown to be significant, as well as the presence of

---


the free hydroxyl (to coordinate to magnesium). Aldol adducts were isolated in 46–67% yield, generally ≥75:25 syn:anti selectivity, and approximately 70% optical purity. Aromatic aldehydes were shown to be superior substrates than aliphatic aldehydes.

Scheme 3.6: Imine as a chiral glycine equivalent.

Catalytic Asymmetric Approaches

A second strategy to impart selectivity into glycine aldol reactions employs achiral substrates with chiral catalysts as stereoinducing factors. To demonstrate examples of this method, several research groups have reacted aldehydes with optically inactive α-isothiocyanato acyl oxazolidinone 139 or 142 in the presence of asymmetric catalysts to afford diastereo- and enantioenriched products (Scheme 3.7). As with the Evans’ approach, these reactions delivered thiocarbamates as products which required additional transformations to reveal the free amine and hydroxyl groups. Willis and coworkers utilized pyridine bis(oxazoline) catalyst 140 (Pybox), α-isothiocyanato acyl oxazolidinone 139, and aryl aldehydes to synthesize syn-thiocarbamate esters 141 in ≥70% yield, ≥80:20 syn:anti selectivity and ≥86% ee of the major diastereomer.
Seidel and others showed that aldol reaction of achiral oxazolidinone 142, thiourea catalyst 143, and primarily aryl and heteroaryl aldehydes afforded syn-thiocarbamates 144 in ≥80% yield, ≥80:20 syn:anti selectivity, and ≥90% ee of the major diastereomer (Scheme 3.7, B). Aliphatic aldehydes were found to be less reactive with this system and afforded products in lower yields and lower selectivities. Lastly, Feng and coworkers employed achiral α-isothiocyanato acyl oxazolidinone 139, Ni(acac)₂, ligand 145 and a wide range of predominantly aromatic and heteroaromatic aldehydes to access syn-thiocarbamate esters 146 in ≥80% yield, ≥90:10 syn:anti selectivity, and ≥90% ee of the major diastereomer (Scheme 3.6, C).
A. Willis Pybox Glycine Aldol

\[ \text{O} \text{-} \text{O} \text{-} \text{NCS} \quad 139 \]

1. Mg(ClO$_4$)$_2$, ArCHO

\[ 140 \text{ (11 mol %), } \text{-Pr$_2$N$_2$Et, } \text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2, 4\text{Å MS, } -78^\circ\text{C} \]

2. CH$_3$MgBr, EtOH

\[ \text{O} \text{-} \text{H} \text{-} \text{N} \text{-} \text{S} \quad 141 \]

>70%, >86% ee, >80:20 syn:anti

B. Seidel Thiourea Glycine Aldol

\[ \text{O} \text{-} \text{O} \text{-} \text{NCS} \quad 142 \]

RCHO, 143 (5 mol %)

\[ \text{O} \text{-} \text{H} \text{-} \text{N} \text{-} \text{S} \quad 144 \]

>80%, >90% ee, >80:20 syn:anti

C. Feng Nickel-Catalyzed Glycine Aldol

\[ \text{O} \text{-} \text{O} \text{-} \text{NCS} \quad 139 \]

Ni(acac)$_2$ (2.5 mol %), RCHO

\[ \text{O} \text{-} \text{H} \text{-} \text{N} \text{-} \text{S} \quad 146 \]

>80%, >90% ee, >90:10 syn:anti

Scheme 3.7: Catalytic asymmetric glycine aldol reactions with isothiocyanate oxazolidinones 139 and 142.

Achiral imines, commonly the Schiff bases of tert-butyl glycine esters, were also utilized in conjunction with chiral catalysts to afford diastereoenriched β-hydroxy-α-amino acids. The first description of such a transformation came from the Miller group in 1991, and later the Shibasaki and Castle laboratories employed a similar strategy (Scheme 3.8). Treatment of imine 147 with a variety of aldehydes in the presence of cinchona alkaloid catalysts 150 or 151 under phase transfer conditions afforded β-hydroxy-α-amino esters 148 in 46 – 92% yield, with moderate 14 – 56% de. Medium- to long-chained alkyl and hydrophobic aryl aldehydes were the

---

best substrates for this reaction. The free β-hydroxy-α-amino acids were liberated by refluxing 148 in a 6M HCl solution. Shibasaki tuned his catalyst to favor the production of anti-aldol adducts and Castle optimized his cinchona alkaloid catalyst to generate both syn- and anti-aldol adducts, albeit with modest diastereo- and enantioselectivities.

Scheme 3.8: Miller glycine aldol reaction with imine 147 and cinchona alkaloid derived catalysts 150 and 151.

Utilizing chiral quaternary ammonium salts like 152 in aldol reactions of aliphatic aldehydes with the same imine 147, Maruoka and coworkers effectively tuned the selectivity of their system to access anti-β-hydroxy-α-amino esters (Scheme 3.9). The ester products such as 153 were isolated in ≥70% yield, with ≥96:4 anti:syn ratio and ≥97% ee of the anti diastereomer. Aryl aldehydes were shown to be poor substrates for this system as little stereoselectivity was observed in the products of those transformations.


Scheme 3.9: Maruoka anti-selective glycine aldol reaction with imine 147.

In addition to the imine 147, Corey and coworkers reported the use of trimethylsilyl ketene acetal 154 as an effective nucleophile in cinchona alkaloid catalyzed aldol reactions with aliphatic aldehydes (Scheme 3.10).\textsuperscript{101} Syn-β-hydroxy-α-amino esters 156 were isolated in ca. 70% yield, with syn:anti ratios ranging from 1:1 to 13:1 (α-branched aldehydes gave higher diastereoselectivities).

Scheme 3.10: Corey syn-glycine aldol with TMS-ketene acetal 154 catalyzed by cinchona alkaloid 155.

Bold and coworkers utilized ethyl ester 157 as an achiral glycine equivalent (Scheme 3.11).\textsuperscript{102} Treatment of ethyl ester 157 with LDA, followed by addition of the titanium-


carbohydrate complex 159 and the aldehyde electrophile, afforded *syn*-aldol adducts 161 in 43 – 70% yield, usually ≥96% de for the *syn*-diastereomer and generally ≥95% ee.

![Scheme 3.11: Bold *syn*-glycine aldol with ester 157 catalyzed by titanium-carbohydrate complex 159.](image)

Barbas III and others reported the use of achiral amino aldehyde 162 as a glycine equivalent in an L-proline catalyzed aldol reaction with α-branched aldehydes (Scheme 3.12). 103 Aldol adducts were isolated as the corresponding methyl esters 164 in 62 – 75% yield, 1:1 – 16:1 *anti:*syn ratios and 86 – 98% ee. Despite good diastereo- and enantioselectivities, the narrow substrate scope of this transformation limits its application in the synthesis of *anti*-β-hydroxy-α-amino acids.

---

Oxazoline-4-carboxylates, other synthetically useful intermediates to access β-hydroxy-α-amino acids, can be converted into the desired scaffold upon treatment with strong acid. Ito, Hayashi and coworkers pioneered efforts to synthesize β-hydroxy-α-amino acids via oxazoline-4-carboxylates in the late 1980s. They found that treatment of α-isocyanate esters and amides 165 with aldehydes in the presence of a gold(I) catalyst and ferrocenylylphosphine ligand 166 afforded diastereoenriched oxazolines 167 (Scheme 3.13), which were hydrolyzed to produce syn-β-hydroxy-α-amino acids 168.\textsuperscript{104}

---

Ibata\textsuperscript{105} and the Evans group,\textsuperscript{106} respectively (Scheme 3.14). These systems were found to be highly efficient with aryl aldehydes.\textsuperscript{107} Suga and Ibata isolated oxazoline-4-carboxylates 172 in 51 – 91\% yield, generally $\geq$80:20 \textit{cis:trans} ratio, and 64 – 90\% ee (Scheme 3.14, A), while the Evans group produced oxazoline-4-carboxylates 176 usually in $\geq$90\% yield, $\geq$90:10 dr and $\geq$95\% ee (Scheme 3.14, B). Conversion of the oxazoline products into $\beta$-hydroxy-$\alpha$-amino acids required a three step sequence and strongly acidic conditions.

\textbf{A. Suga and Ibata}

\begin{align*}
\text{H} & \\
\text{Ar}^2 & \\
\text{O} & \\
\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3 & \\
\text{172} & \\
\text{CH}_3\text{CN, 5 °C} & \\
\text{1 - 5 d} & \\
\text{171 (30 mol %)} & \\
\text{Ar}^1 & \\
\text{N} & \\
\text{O} & \\
\text{O} & \\
\text{O} & \\
\text{Ar} & \\
\text{169} & \\
\text{170} & \\
\end{align*}

\textbf{B. Evans}

\begin{align*}
\text{H} & \\
\text{Ar} & \\
\text{O} & \\
\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3 & \\
\text{176} & \\
\text{toluene, 25 °C} & \\
\text{1 d} & \\
\text{175 (5 – 10 mol %)} & \\
\text{X} & \\
\text{SbF}_6 & \\
\text{175} & \\
\end{align*}

\textbf{Scheme 3.14: Oxazoline syntheses via aluminum catalysis}

There are various synthetic avenues to access the $\beta$-hydroxy-$\alpha$-amino acid scaffold, utilizing both chiral and achiral glycine equivalents. A wide range of aldehydes is tolerated as electrophiles, but in general, if a reagent system has been optimized for reaction with aliphatic


\textsuperscript{107} Heteroaromatic aldehydes, however, were not optimal substrates for this system, resulting in lower yields and lower diastereoselectivities.
aldehydes, it will lack selectivity with aromatic or heteroaromatic substrates. Alternatively, if both alkyl and aryl aldehydes are well-suited for a system, lower diastereoselectivities are seen for the aldol products. The use of certain chiral auxiliaries requires harsh conditions for their removal or requires further steps to reveal the hydroxyl and amino substituents. Lastly, none of the auxiliaries provide mainstream access to $\beta,\beta'$-disubstituted-$\beta$-hydroxy-$\alpha$-amino acid derivatives, the products of a glycine aldolization with ketone electrophiles.  

### Synthesis of Pseudoephedrine Glycinamide

Expansion of the known chemistry of the pseudoephedrine and pseudoephedrine auxiliaries to include glycine aldol reactions was achieved through collaboration with Dr. Ian Seiple and Jaron Mercer, and with helpful insights from Ziyang Zhang. Dr. Seiple found that pseudoephedrine glycinamide (179) could be synthesized in a two-step sequence or a one-pot

---

108 In addition to the two instances mentioned previously where ketones were substrates for asymmetric glycine aldol reactions (Schöllkopf and Seebach), acetone and trifluromethyl ketones have been used as electrophiles in asymmetric glycine aldol transformations via imine-metal complexes. For acetone, see (a) Belokon, Y. N.; Zel’tser, I. E.; Bakhmutov, V. I.; Saporovskaya, M. B.; Ryzhov, M. G.; Yanovskii, A. I.; Struchkov, Y. T.; Belikov, V. M. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 1983, 105, 2010–2017. For trifluromethyl ketones, see (b) Soloshonok, V. A.; Avilov, D. V.; Kukhar, V. P. *Tetrahedron: Asymmetry* 1996, 7, 1547–1550. (c) Soloshonok, V. A.; Avilov, D. V.; Kukhar, V. P. *Tetrahedron* 1996, 52, 12433–12442.


protocol from the appropriate enantiomers of pseudoephedrine (177) and N-Boc glycine, and then purified by either flash column chromatography or recrystallization from ethanol (Scheme 3.15). The free flowing, white crystalline solid was routinely produced on a 30-g scale and was found to be non-hygroscopic and easily handled in the laboratory environment.


Single crystal X-ray crystallography of (R,R)-pseudoephedrine glycinamide ((R,R)-179) allowed us to visualize its solid-state structure (Figure 3.2). Unlike pseudoephedrine glycinamide which could only be crystallized as a hydrate,\textsuperscript{109} pseudoephedrine glycinamide contained no water or solvent molecules in its crystal lattice.
Aldolizations of Pseudoephedrine Glycinamide

In an advance with broad applications, Dr. Seiple discovered that asymmetric aldolization of pseudoephedrine glycinamide with aldehydes, and (surprisingly) ketones provided syn-β-hydroxy-α-amino amides with high diastereoselectivities,\textsuperscript{113} without the need of any protecting groups (Scheme 3.16). Jaron Mercer optimized the general reaction conditions: treatment of 1.3 equivalents of (R,R)-179 with 2.5 equivalents of LiHMDS in the presence of a saturating amount of LiCl\textsuperscript{114} in THF at −78 °C, followed by the addition of electrophile (and warming to 0 °C for ketone substrates) afforded syn-β-hydroxy-α-amino amides of the general scaffold 180.

\textsuperscript{113} While pseudoephedrine glycinamide was shown to undergo stereoselective aldolizations with aldehydes, the yield and the selectivity of the reaction were inferior to the analogous reaction with pseudoephedrine glycinamide.

\textsuperscript{114} Lithium chloride was essential to solubilize the pseudoephedrine glycinamide enolate and to achieve high diastereoselectivities in aldolization reactions.
Scheme 3.16: Aldolization of \((R,R)-179\) with aldehydes and ketones.

This reaction has the potential to produce up to four diastereomeric aldol adducts; however in every case, one isomer predominated. The minor diastereomers, typically comprising less than 15% of the isolated products, were not easily separated from each other and in many cases, were not studied in detail.\(^{115}\) In each case, the major diastereomer of 180 was purified by flash column chromatography and, in most cases, these were solids.

The stereochemical outcome of this highly selective transformation was rationalized by invoking a \(Z\) amide enolate (comparable to alkylation reactions of pseudoephedrine amide enolates) that proceeds through the closed Zimmerman–Traxler transition structure shown (Figure 3.3).

![Figure 3.3: Rationale for the selectivity in aldolizations with (R,R)-179.](image)

Jaron Mercer, Dr. Seiple and I screened a number of aldehydes with \((R,R)-179\) (Table 3.1). Aliphatic aldehydes, including \(\alpha\)-branched and \(\alpha\)-tetrasubstituted, were good substrates.

\(^{115}\) We fully characterized the minor adduct from symmetric ketone substrates. See experimental section for details.
Aromatic and heteroaromatic, as well as alkenyl and alkynyl aldehydes were all demonstrated to be suitable electrophiles. In almost every case, the diastereomeric ratio\textsuperscript{116} was $\geq 80:20$ and pure product was isolated in 63 – 89% yield.

Table 3.1: Aldolization Adducts of Pseudoephedrine Glycinamide with Aldehydes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alkyl</th>
<th>Alkynyl/Alkenyl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1.png" alt="Image" /> 181, 89% 94:6 dr</td>
<td><img src="image2.png" alt="Image" /> 190, 75% 83:17 dr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image3.png" alt="Image" /> 182, 72% 83:17 dr</td>
<td><img src="image4.png" alt="Image" /> 191, 78% 79:21 dr</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*dr was determined by HPLC or $^1$H NMR analysis.

\textsuperscript{116} The diastereomeric ratio is reported as major isomer:Σ(minor isomers) and was determined by HPLC or $^1$H NMR analysis of crude reaction mixtures.
To establish the relative and absolute stereoselectivity of the reaction, we obtained crystals of aldol adduct 183 derived from (R,R)-179 and isobutyraldehyde suitable for X-ray analysis. The solid-state structure of 183 confirmed the initial assignment of a syn-relationship between the amine and hydroxyl functionalities and revealed it to be stereochemically homologous to L-threonine (Figure 3.4). Also, aldol adducts 187 and 188 were successfully transformed into the antibiotics chloramphenicol and thiamphenicol, respectively, thereby forming a homologous series with 183. The stereochemical configurations of the remaining aldehyde aldol adducts were assigned by analogy.

![Crystal structure of aldol adduct 183.](image)

**Figure 3.4:** Crystal structure of aldol adduct 183.

Jaron Mercer, Dr. Seiple and I also screened a number of symmetric and non-symmetric ketones with (R,R)-179 (Table 3.2). Symmetric ketones afforded β-tetrasubstituted-α-amino amides, while non-symmetric ketones produced β,β'-disubstituted-β-hydroxy-α-amino amides, installing a tetrasubstituted stereocenter in a selective manner. The diastereomeric ratios were determined and reported as noted above and in most cases, the diastereomeric ratio was greater than those seen with aldehyde substrates.

---

117 See pages 129–130.
Table 3.2: Aldolization Adducts of Pseudoephedrine Glycinamide with Ketones.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adduct</th>
<th>R or F</th>
<th>dr</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Adduct 192" /></td>
<td>92, 81%</td>
<td>95:5 dr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Adduct 193" /></td>
<td>93, 81%</td>
<td>95:5 dr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Adduct 194" /></td>
<td>94, 70%</td>
<td>94:6 dr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image4" alt="Adduct 195" /></td>
<td>95, 82%</td>
<td>94:6 dr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image5" alt="Adduct 196" /></td>
<td>96, 81%</td>
<td>88:12 dr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image6" alt="Adduct 197" /></td>
<td>97, 55%</td>
<td>77:23 dr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image7" alt="Adduct 198" /></td>
<td>98, 54%</td>
<td>65:35 dr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image8" alt="Adduct 199" /></td>
<td>99, 98%</td>
<td>98:2 dr</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*dr was determined by HPLC or $^1$H NMR analysis.

Pure products were isolated in 54 – 98% yield. The high yield and diastereoselectivity of adduct $^{199}$ presumably arose from the stereochemical matching of the diastereofacial preference of the enolate with the trajectory of Felkin-Anh addition into the chiral ketone substrate (Figure 3.5, A and B). In the absence of reinforcing stereochemical elements on the electrophile, the diastereoselectivity fell, as demonstrated by the lower dr of adduct $^{198}$. The low yield of adduct $^{197}$ seemingly resulted from competitive 1,4-addition of the enolate to the enone electrophile.

---

$^{118}$ A distribution of the four diastereomers was observed in a 65:20:9:6 ratio, as determined by $^1$H NMR analysis.
Figure 3.5: Rationale for high yield and diastereoselectivity seen in aldol adduct 199.

Just as with 183, we obtained crystals of aldol adduct 195 derived from (R,R)-179 and methyl isopropyl ketone suitable for X-ray analysis (Figure 3.6). As expected, the solid-state structure of 195 was similar to that of aldol adduct 183, with the methyl group serving as Rs. The stereochemical configurations of the remaining ketone aldol adducts were assigned by analogy.

Figure 3.6: Crystal structure of aldol adduct 195.

Most of the purified aldol adducts exist as two rotamers in solution; the presence of the two forms can be seen in the $^1$H and $^{13}$C NMR spectra. Rotameric relationships between peaks were
verified via saturation transfer experiments (1D gradient nOe experiments). Upon close examination of the $^1$H NMR spectra for the purified aldol adducts from Tables 3.1 and 3.2, we could observe trace amounts of an impurity we identified as the N,O-acyl transfer product 200, in addition to the tertiary amide rotameric peaks (Figure 3.7). The presence of this product strongly suggested that these constitutional isomers were very close in energy to the tertiary amides. The intermediacy of the N,O-acyl transfer product was invoked to rationalize the ease with which the aldol adducts were directly transformed under unusually mild conditions and without protecting groups.

![Figure 3.7: Rotamer and N,O-acyl transfer product 200 of aldol adduct 182.](image)

**Transformations of the Aldol Products**

Dr. Seiple and I developed exceptionally mild conditions to directly transform the aldol adducts 180 into enantiomerically enriched carboxylates and alcohols. Additionally, Dr. Seiple accessed enantioenriched ketones by a two-step sequence from the aldol adducts. All of these chiral building blocks enable streamlined access of various antibiotics.

The tertiary amide aldol adducts were hydrolyzed upon treatment with 1 equivalent of NaOH in a 1:1 mixture of THF and methanol at 23 °C for several hours and the (R,R)-177 auxiliary was

---


120 Usually less than 5% of this impurity was present. See Ref. 109b and Myers, A. G.; Yang, B. H.; Chen, H.; McKinstry, L.; Kopecky, D. J.; Gleason, J. L. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 1997, 119, 6496–6511.

121 Formation of a cyclic carbamate from the β-hydroxy-α-amino amide aldol adduct, followed by Grignard addition to the amide afforded enantioenriched ketones.
recovered (Scheme 3.17). These conditions are exceedingly mild and are more consistent with saponification of an ester than hydrolysis of a tertiary amide. In contrast, hydrolysis of tertiary pseudoephedrine glycinamides required strongly acidic (9 N H₂SO₄) or basic (NaOH) conditions with heating. I empirically determined that presence of methanol in the solvent system was crucial to avoid retroaldol fragmentation during the hydrolysis, an otherwise facile process. The resulting carboxylate salts were isolated in ≥87% yield and ≥98% ee. Of note, carboxylate 207, isolated in 94% yield and ≥98% ee, was earlier reported as a key starting material in a synthesis of vancomycin developed by the Nicolaou group.

As previously mentioned, retroaldol fragmentation of the aldol adducts was a competitive process during hydrolysis. In the optimized method, we could minimize this decomposition

---

122 The (R,R)-177 pseudoephedrine auxiliary was recovered in ≥90% yield in each case and in high purity.

123 Enantiomeric excess was determined upon transformation of the carboxylates into Mosher amides and subsequent ¹H NMR analysis.

pathway, but certain aldol adducts still underwent noticeable retro-aldol fragmentation. For example, subjection of compound 196 to the optimized hydrolysis procedure afforded acetophenone (210), recovered (R,R)-177, and sodium glycinate (209) (Scheme 3.18, A). Searching to suppress this decomposition pathway, Dr. Seiple found that protection of the β-hydroxy group was necessary. He chose a cyclic carbamate as the protecting group because it can be easily introduced and cleaved under mild conditions.125

**Scheme 3.18:** Carbamate strategy to overcome retroaldol fragmentation.

Treatment of aldol adducts 196 and 199 with phosgene in the presence of Hunig’s base cleanly afforded carbamates 212 and 214, respectively, after a biphasic extraction

---

(Scheme 3.18, B and C). The cleavage of the chiral auxiliary was achieved by heating the substrates in a mixture of 1,4-dioxane and water. Acid-base extraction yielded acids 213 and 215, respectively, and the \((R,R)-177\) auxiliary was recovered in \(\geq 90\%\) yield. Carbamate 214 later became a pivotal building block in the synthesis of more than 240 novel macrolide antibiotics in the Myers lab.\(^{126}\)

Dr. Seiple and I also investigated alternative methods for auxiliary removal, specifically a reductive cleavage. We developed a methodology to directly reduce the tertiary amide to an alcohol, thereby providing enantioenriched 2-amino-1,3-diol (Scheme 3.19). Subjection of aldol adduct 187 to 5 equivalents of NaBH\(_4\)\(^{127}\) in ethanol at 40 °C reductively cleaved the amide, producing the diol 216 in 80% yield and recovering the auxiliary in quantitative yield. Traditionally, reductions of pseudoephedrine amides are performed with a more reactive hydride donor lithium amidotrihydroborate (LAB). Attempts to reduce 187 with LAB gave the desired diol 216 in low yield, presumably due to product coordination to boron.

---


With the enantioenriched 2-amino-1,3-diols easily accessible, I investigated application of our methodology to the synthesis of chloramphenicol and thiamphenicol, two broad-spectrum antibiotics primarily used in developing countries and listed on the World Health Organization’s List of Essential Medicines.\(^{128}\) The synthesis of chloramphenicol was completed by acylation of the 2-amino-1,3-diol 216 with methyl dichloroacetate (Scheme 3.19), thereby providing the antibiotic in 3 steps and in 60% overall yield. Thiamphenicol was synthesized in an identical manner from para-methanesulfonylbenzaldehyde and (R,R)-179 in three steps and 44% overall yield. Commercial routes to these antibiotics typically employ six linear steps, including a resolution.\(^{129}\)


Transformations of the Carboxylate Products

Lastly, Jaron Mercer and I transformed the β-hydroxy-α-amino carboxylates into protected amino acid precursors (esters and N-Boc acids, Scheme 3.20). Treatment of carboxylate 203 with acidic methanol afforded the hydrochloride salt of methyl ester 217 in 91% yield. Also, N-Boc amino acid 218 was synthesized from the carboxylate 208 upon addition of Boc₂O in the presence of NaOH. Amino acid 218 serves as a chiral building block in the synthesis of monocyclic β-lactam antibiotic BAL30072,¹³⁰ a fully synthetic antibiotic currently in Phase I clinical trials for the treatment of Gram-negative bacterial infections.

![Scheme 3.20: Esterification and N-Boc protection of the carboxylates 203 and 208.](image)

In summary, we have developed methodology for asymmetric aldolization of pseudoephedrine glycinamide with aldehydes and ketones to produce syn-β-hydroxy-α-amino amides with high diastereoselectivities and without the use of protecting groups. These aldol adducts can be transformed into enantiomerically enriched alcohols, ketones, and carboxylates, many of which enable powerfully simplified syntheses of various antibiotics.

An extended application of this methodology in the synthesis of C4-disubstituted monobactam antibiotics will be discussed in greater detail in Chapter 4.

¹³⁰ See Ref. 146 in Chapter 4.
General Experimental Procedures

All reactions were performed in flame-dried glassware fitted with rubber septa under a positive pressure of argon, unless otherwise noted. Air- and moisture-sensitive liquids were transferred via syringe or stainless steel cannula. Solutions were concentrated by rotary evaporation below 35 °C. Analytical thin-layer chromatography (TLC) was performed using glass plates pre-coated with silica gel (0.25-mm, 60-Å pore size, 230–400 mesh, Merck KGA) impregnated with a fluorescent indicator (254 nm). TLC plates were visualized by exposure to ultraviolet light (UV), then were stained by submersion in a 10% solution of phosphomolybdic acid (PMA) in ethanol, followed by brief heating on a hot plate. Flash column chromatography was performed as described by Still et al., employing silica gel (60 Å, standard grade) purchased from Dynamic Adsorbents.

Materials

Commercial solvents and reagents were used as received with the following exceptions. Hexamethyldisilazane (HMDS) was distilled from calcium hydride under an atmosphere of dinitrogen at 760 mmHg. Dichloromethane, ethyl ether, dioxane, and tetrahydrofuran were purified by passage through Al₂O₃ under argon by the method of Grubbs et al. Aldehydes and ketones for use as electrophiles in aldol reactions were fractionally distilled immediately prior to use. The molarity of solutions of n-butyllithium was determined by titration against diphenylacetic acid as an indicator (average of three determinations).
Instrumentation

Proton nuclear magnetic resonance (\(^1\)H NMR) spectra and carbon nuclear magnetic resonance (\(^{13}\)C NMR) spectra were recorded on Varian MERCURY 400 (400 MHz/100 MHz), Varian INOVA 500 (500 MHz/125 MHz), or Varian INOVA 600 (600 MHz/150 MHz) NMR spectrometers at 23 °C. Proton chemical shifts are expressed in parts per million (ppm, δ scale) and are referenced to residual protium in the NMR solvent (CHCl\(_3\): δ 7.26, D\(_2\)HCOD: δ 3.31). Carbon chemical shifts are expressed in parts per million (ppm, δ scale) and are referenced to the carbon resonance of the NMR solvent (CDCl\(_3\): δ 77.0, CD\(_3\)OD: δ 49.0). Data are represented as follows: chemical shift, multiplicity (s = singlet, d = doublet, t = triplet, q = quartet, dd = doublet of doublets, dt = doublet of triplets, sxt = sextet, m = multiplet, br = broad, app = apparent), integration, and coupling constant (\(J\)) in Hertz (Hz). Infrared (IR) spectra were obtained using a Shimadzu 8400S FT-IR spectrophotometer referenced to a polystyrene standard. Data are represented as follows: frequency of absorption (cm\(^{-1}\)), and intensity of absorption (s = strong, m = medium, br = broad). HPLC retention times were acquired using a Beckman System Gold instrument equipped with a Chiracel OD-H column (5 mm particle size, 4.6 mm x 250 mm). Melting points were determined using a Thomas Scientific capillary melting point apparatus. High-resolution mass spectra were obtained at the Harvard University Mass Spectrometry Facility using a Bruker micrOTOF-QII mass spectrometer. LC–MS analysis was performed on an Agilent 1260 Infinity instrument equipped with a 6120 quadrupole LC–MS. X-ray crystallographic analysis was performed at the Harvard University X-Ray Crystallographic Laboratory by Dr. Shao-Liang Zheng.

(For clarity, intermediates that have not been assigned numbers in the text are numbered sequentially in the Experimental Information beginning with 219.)
General Comments on NMR Spectra of Pseudoephedrine Amides

$^1$H NMR and $^{13}$C NMR spectra of pseudoephedrine amides can be complicated by the presence of tertiary amide rotameric peaks in addition to N,O-acyl transfer product signals. Rotameric relationships between peaks were established via saturation transfer experiments (1D gradient nOe experiments) as described by Ley.$^{119}$ The presence of N,O-acyl transfer products in NMR spectra was substrate- and pH-dependent. In some instances, HSQC analysis aided in determination of rotameric and N,O-acyl transfer product carbon assignments. Two annotated spectra are produced below (Figure 3.8).
Figure 3.8. Annotated $^1$H and $^{13}$C NMR spectra of aldol adduct 182.
A solution of \textit{N}-Boc-glycine (27.4 g, 156 mmol, 1.3 equiv) in dichloromethane (480 mL) in a 2-L round-bottom flask was cooled to 0 °C in an ice-water bath. Triethylamine (25.1 mL, 180 mmol, 1.5 equiv) was added dropwise over 2 minutes followed by pivaloyl chloride (17.73 mL, 144 mmol, 1.2 equiv) dropwise over 3 minutes. During the addition, a fine white solid precipitated from the solution. After 30 min, a second portion of triethylamine (25.1 mL, 180 mmol, 1.5 equiv) was added dropwise over 2 minutes, followed by finely powdered \((R,R)\)-pseudoephenamine (27.3 g, 120 mmol, 1.0 equiv) in a single portion. The resulting mixture was allowed to stir at 0 °C for 45 minutes, at which point TLC analysis (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 1% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution) indicated complete consumption of pseudoephenamine. Trifluoroacetic acid (241 mL, 3123 mmol) was added (the first 15 mL was added carefully over 5 minutes, the remainder was added as a single portion), and the vessel was allowed to warm to 23 °C (CAUTION: gas evolution!). After 1.5 h, TLC analysis of the organic layer (mini-workup of 0.1 mL sample of the reaction mixture with dichloromethane/2 M NaOH, eluted with 10% methanol in dichloromethane + 1% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution) indicated complete consumption of the intermediate \textit{N}-Boc glycinamide. The mixture was diluted with toluene (250 mL) and the volatiles were removed under reduced pressure at ≤30 °C. The clear yellow oil was dissolved in dichloromethane (500 mL), and the vessel was equipped with an internal thermometer and cooled in an ice water bath. The solution was stirred vigorously while 3 M aqueous sodium
hydroxide (~500 mL) was added slowly (~10 mL / min) so as to maintain an internal temperature of ≤15 ºC, until the solution reached a pH of ~13-14. The mixture was transferred to a separatory funnel and the layers were separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with dichloromethane (300 mL), and the combined organic layers were dried with potassium carbonate (25 g), and were filtered through a sintered glass funnel. The filtrate was diluted with toluene (250 mL) and was concentrated under reduced pressure, and was further dried under high vacuum for 2 h. The solid was suspended in 200-proof ethanol (55 mL), and the mixture was equipped with a stir bar and brought to reflux with stirring. After 2 minutes, the solid fully dissolved, and the vessel was removed from heat and allowed to cool with constant stirring. Within 30 minutes, a white crystalline solid began to precipitate. Stirring was continued at 23 ºC for 14 h and 0 ºC for another 5 h. The mixture was filtered through a sintered glass funnel, and the resulting solid was washed with ethanol (2 × 15 mL) and diethyl ether (2 × 25 mL). Further drying at 0.1 mmHg provided (R,R)-pseudoephedrine glycinate (23.1 g, 68%). The filtrate was concentrated to provide a yellow foam that was recrystallized as before to provide a second crop of crystals (3.43 g, 10%) as a white crystalline solid (total: 26.6 g, 78%). Mp = 168–170 ºC. TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution): Rf = 0.26 (UV, PMA). 1H NMR (3:1 ratio of rotamers, asterisk (*) denotes minor rotamer, 500 MHz, CDCl3), δ: 7.35 (d, 2H, J = 7.4 Hz) 7.28–7.16 (m, 8H), 5.82 (d, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz), 5.30 (d, 1H, J = 8.7 Hz), 5.28* (d, 1H, J = 7.8 Hz), 4.87* (d, 1H, J = 7.8 Hz), 3.38* (dd, 2H, J = 47.4 Hz, 16.1 Hz), 3.27 (dd, 2H, J = 34.1 Hz, 17.1 Hz), 2.95* (s, 3H), 2.82 (s, 3H), 1.47 (br s, 2H). 13C NMR (2:1 ratio of rotamers, asterisk (*) denotes minor rotamer, 125 MHz, CDCl3), δ: 174.1, 173.6*, 141.7, 141.6*, 137.0, 136.5*, 128.5, 128.4*, 128.4, 128.3, 128.0*, 127.8*, 127.7, 127.6, 127.0*, 126.9, 72.9, 72.5*, 64.8*, 63.9, 43.5, 43.2*, 31.1, 29.6*.
$^1$H NMR (2:1 ratio of rotamers, asterisk (*) denotes minor rotamer, 400 MHz, CD$_3$OD), $\delta$: 7.40–7.36 (m, 2H), 7.34–7.30 (m, 2H), 7.26–7.15 (m, 6H), 5.99 (d, 1H, $J = 9.5$ Hz), 5.38* (d, 1H, $J = 8.3$ Hz), 5.37 (d, 1H, $J = 9.5$ Hz), 5.02* (d, 1H, $J = 8.3$ Hz), 3.58 (dd, 2H, $J = 21.6$ Hz, 16.5 Hz), 3.42 (dd, 2H, $J = 29.9$ Hz, 17.8 Hz), 2.99 (s, 3H), 2.96* (s, 3H). $^{13}$C NMR (2:1 ratio of rotamers, asterisk (*) denotes minor rotamer, 125 MHz, CD$_3$OD), $\delta$: 175.1*, 174.9, 143.3*, 143.3, 138.6, 138.0*, 130.0, 129.4*, 129.3*, 129.3, 129.2, 128.9, 128.8*, 128.6*, 128.6, 128.5, 128.5*, 73.4*, 73.2, 66.2*, 63.8, 43.6, 43.5*, 30.3, 30.0*. FTIR (neat), cm$^{-1}$: 3356 (br), 3032 (m), 2976 (m), 1634 (s), 1452 (s), 1049 (s), 976 (s), 698 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C$_{17}$H$_{20}$N$_2$O$_2$ + Na)$^+$: 307.1417; Found: 307.1426.
A solution of \( N \)-Boc-glycine (5.0 g, 28.6 mmol, 1.3 equiv) in dichloromethane (88 mL) in a 250-mL round-bottom flask was cooled to 0 ºC in an ice-water bath. Triethylamine (3.99 mL, 28.6 mmol, 1.3 equiv) was added dropwise over 2 minutes followed by pivaloyl chloride (3.52 mL, 28.6 mmol, 1.3 equiv) dropwise over 5 minutes. During the addition, a fine white solid precipitated from the solution. After 30 min at 0 ºC, a second portion of triethylamine (3.99 mL, 28.6 mmol, 1.3 equiv) was added dropwise over 2 minutes, followed by finely powdered \((R,R)\)-pseudoephenamine (5.0 g, 22.0 mmol, 1.0 equiv) in a single portion. The resulting mixture was allowed to stir at 0 ºC for 90 minutes, at which point TLC analysis (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 1% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution) indicated complete consumption of pseudoephenamine. 5% Aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution (67 mL) was added, and the layers were mixed vigorously and separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with dichloromethane (2 × 50 mL), and the combined organic layers were washed sequentially with water (70 mL) and saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution (70 mL). The washed organic phase was dried over sodium sulfate and filtered. The filtrate was concentrated and the crude solid was recrystallized from hot toluene (27 mL, ~3.3 mL per gram of theoretical product) to provide \( N \)-Boc-\((R,R)\)-pseudoephenamine glycinamide as white crystals (7.59 g, 90%). Mp = 166–68 ºC. TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution): \( R_f = 0.43 \) (UV, PMA). \(^1\)H NMR (multiple rotamers present, spectrum reported as observed, 500 MHz, CDCl\(_3\)), \( \delta: 7.35 \) (d, 2H, \( J = 7.8 \) Hz) 7.31–7.21 (m, 13H), 5.72 (d,
1H, $J = 8.2$ Hz), 5.58 (br s, 0.3H), 5.51 (br s, 1.2H), 5.39 (d, 1H, $J = 8.1$ Hz), 5.33 (d, 0.3H, $J = 7.9$ Hz), 4.96 (d, 0.3H, $J = 8.0$ Hz), 4.91 (d, 0.1H, $J = 7.9$ Hz), 4.13–4.03 (br m, 0.7H), 3.94 (d, 2H, $J = 4.0$ Hz), 3.19 (br s, 0.9H), 2.99 (s, 0.9H), 2.87 (s, 3H), 1.45 (s, 12H). $^{13}$C NMR (major rotamer reported, 125 MHz, CDCl$_3$), $\delta$: 170.1, 155.7, 141.2, 136.5, 128.6, 128.5, 128.4, 127.9, 127.7, 126.8, 79.6, 73.3, 64.6, 42.8, 31.8, 28.3. FTIR (neat), cm$^{-1}$: 3420 (br), 2978 (m), 1703 (s), 1643 (s), 1167 (s), 909 (s), 727 (s), 698 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for $(\text{C}_{22}\text{H}_{28}\text{N}_{2}\text{O}_{4} + \text{H})^+$: 385.2122; Found: 385.2134.
A solution of $N$-Boc-(R,R)-pseudoephenamine glycinamide (5.0 g, 13 mmol, 1.0 equiv) in dichloromethane (52 mL) in a 250-mL round-bottom flask was cooled to 0 ºC in an ice-water bath. Trifluoroacetic acid (13 mL) was added slowly over 5 minutes. The colorless solution was allowed to stir at 0 ºC for 5 minutes, before the cooling bath was removed and stirring was continued at 23 ºC. After 1.5 h, TLC analysis of the organic layer (mini-workup of 0.1 mL sample of the reaction mixture with dichloromethane/1 M aqueous sodium hydroxide solution, eluted with 10% methanol–dichloromethane + 1% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution) indicated complete consumption of the starting material. The reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo to provide a clear yellow oil. The oil was dissolved in dichloromethane (50 mL), and the vessel cooled in an ice water bath. The solution was stirred vigorously while 3 M aqueous sodium hydroxide (~30 mL) was added slowly by pipetful until the solution reached a pH of ~13-14. The mixture was transferred to a separatory funnel and the layers were separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with dichloromethane ($2 \times 40$ mL), and the combined organic layers were dried with potassium carbonate (3 g), and were filtered through a sintered glass funnel. The filtrate was diluted with toluene (25 mL) and was concentrated under reduced pressure, and was further dried at 0.1 mmHg for 1 h. The solid was suspended in 200-proof ethanol (7 mL, ~1.7 mL ethanol per theoretical gram of product), and the mixture was equipped with a stir bar and brought to reflux with stirring. After 2 minutes, the solid had fully dissolved, and the vessel was removed from heat and allowed to cool to 23 ºC with constant
stirring. Within 30 minutes, a white crystalline solid began to precipitate. Stirring was continued at 23 °C for 14 h and at 0 °C for another 5 h. The mixture was filtered through a sintered glass funnel, and the resulting solid was washed with cool (0 °C) ethanol (2 × 1.5 mL) and diethyl ether (2 × 2.5 mL). Further drying at 0.1 mmHg provided (R,R)-pseudoephenamine glycinamide (2.13 g, 57%). The filtrate was concentrated to provide a yellow foam that was recrystallized as before with the exception that the recrystallized solid was only washed with multiple portions of ether to provide a second crop of (R,R)-pseudoephenamine glycinamide (0.84 g, 23%) as a white crystalline solid (total: 2.97 g, 80%). Purification may also be performed by column chromatography on silica gel (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution). On a 3.95 mmol scale, this provided (R,R)-179 as a white foam (3.64 mmol, 92%). Mp = 168–170 °C. TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution): Rf = 0.26 (UV, PMA). 1H NMR (3:1 ratio of rotamers, asterisk (*) denotes minor rotamer, 500 MHz, CDCl3), δ: 7.35 (d, 2H, J = 7.4 Hz) 7.28–7.16 (m, 8H), 5.82 (d, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz), 5.30 (d, 1H, J = 8.7 Hz), 5.28* (d, 1H, J = 7.8 Hz), 4.87* (d, 1H, J = 7.8 Hz), 3.38* (dd, 2H, J = 34.1 Hz, 17.1 Hz), 2.95* (s, 3H), 2.82 (s, 3H), 1.47 (br s, 2H). 13C NMR (2:1 ratio of rotamers, asterisk (*) denotes minor rotamer, 125 MHz, CDCl3), δ: 174.1, 173.6*, 141.7, 141.6*, 137.0, 136.5*, 128.5, 128.4*, 128.4, 128.3, 128.0*, 127.8*, 127.7, 127.6, 127.0*, 126.9, 126.9, 72.9, 72.5*, 64.8*, 63.9, 43.5, 43.2*, 31.1, 29.6*.

1H NMR (2:1 ratio of rotamers, asterisk (*) denotes minor rotamer, 400 MHz, CD3OD), δ: 7.40–7.36 (m, 2H), 7.34–7.30 (m, 2H), 7.26–7.15 (m, 6H), 5.99 (d, 1H, J = 9.5 Hz), 5.38* (d, 1H, J = 8.3 Hz), 5.37 (d, 1H, J = 9.5 Hz), 5.02* (d, 1H, J = 8.5 Hz), 3.58 (dd, 2H, J = 21.6 Hz, 16.5 Hz), 3.42 (dd, 2H, J = 29.9 Hz, 17.8 Hz), 2.99 (s, 3H), 2.96* (s, 3H). 13C NMR (2:1 ratio of
rotamers, asterisk (*) denotes minor rotamer, 125 MHz, CD$_3$OD), δ: 175.1*, 174.9, 143.3*, 143.3, 138.6, 138.0*, 130.0, 129.4*, 129.3*, 129.3, 129.2, 128.9, 128.8*, 128.6*, 128.6, 128.5, 128.5*, 73.4*, 73.2, 66.2*, 63.8, 43.6, 43.5*, 30.3, 30.0*. FTIR (neat), cm$^{-1}$: 3356 (br), 3032 (m), 2976 (m), 1634 (s), 1452 (s), 1049 (s), 976 (s), 698 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C$_{17}$H$_{20}$N$_2$O$_2$ + Na)$^+$: 307.1417; Found: 307.1426.
General Procedure for Aldolization of Pseudoephenamine Glycinamide (179) with Aldehydes.

A 25-mL round-bottom flask equipped with a stir bar was charged with anhydrous lithium chloride (331 mg, 7.80 mmol, 7.8 equiv). The vessel was heated with a gentle flame under vacuum (0.1 mmHg) for 2 minutes. After cooling to 23 °C in vacuo, the flask was backfilled with argon and (R,R)-pseudoephenamine glycinamide (370 mg, 1.30 mmol, 1.3 equiv) was added. Tetrahydrofuran (6.5 mL) was added by syringe and the reaction mixture was stirred at 23 °C until pseudoephenamine glycinamide had dissolved (~5 minutes); lithium chloride does not completely dissolve. The resulting suspension was cooled to −78 °C in a dry ice-acetone cooling bath and a freshly-prepared solution of lithium hexamethyldisilazide in tetrahydrofuran (1.0 M, 2.5 mL, 2.5 mmol, 2.5 equiv) was added dropwise. After 5 minutes, the reaction vessel was transferred to an ice-water bath and stirring was continued for 25 minutes. The vessel was re-cooled to −78 °C, and a solution of aldehyde in tetrahydrofuran (1.0 M, 1.0 mL, 1.0 mmol, 1.0 equiv) was added dropwise. Once the aldehyde was completely consumed as indicated by TLC (usually ≤ 30 minutes), a half-saturated aqueous ammonium chloride solution (0.10 mL) was added and the vessel was allowed to warm to 23 °C. The mixture was partitioned between half-saturated aqueous ammonium chloride solution (20 mL) and ethyl acetate (25 mL). The layers were separated, and the aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (2 × 25 mL). The combined organic extracts were washed with saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution (45 mL) and dried over sodium sulfate. The dried solution was filtered, and the filtrate was
concentrated. The diastereomeric ratio of the crude product was determined by NMR or HPLC analysis (vide infra). The residue was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel.

Aldol adduct 181.

The general procedure for aldolization of pseudoephedrine (R,R)-179 with aldehydes (p. 144) was followed. The diastereomeric ratio of the crude product residue was determined to be 94:6 by HPLC analysis (Agilent Extend-C18, 85:15→65:35 water:acetonitrile + 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid, 0.5 mL/min, λ = 220 nm, tR (minor) = 18.5 min, tR (major) = 20.8 min, tR (minor) = 22.7 min). The residue was purified by flash column chromatography (2→4% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution) to provide the title compound as a white foam (330 mg, 89%). Mp = 53–55 ºC. TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution): Rf = 0.43 (UV, PMA). ¹H NMR (7:1 ratio of rotamers; major rotamer reported, 500 MHz, CDCl₃), δ: 7.39 (d, 2H, J = 7.8 Hz) 7.28–7.19 (m, 8H), 5.89 (d, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz), 5.34 (d, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz), 3.71 (m, 1H), 3.30 (d, 1H, J = 3.9 Hz), 2.95 (s, 3H), 0.89 (s, 9H). ¹³C NMR (major rotamer reported, 125 MHz, CDCl₃), δ: 176.6, 141.2, 136.2, 128.6, 128.3, 128.2, 127.7, 127.5, 126.9, 76.6, 72.9, 63.5, 50.7, 34.7, 32.5, 26.5. FTIR (neat), cm⁻¹: 3356 (br), 3063 (m), 2955 (m), 1616 (s), 1479 (s), 1308 (s), 909 (s), 729 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C₂₂H₃₀N₂O₃ + H)⁺: 371.2329; Found: 371.2330.
Aldol adduct 182.

The general procedure for aldoization of pseudoephedrine glycinamide (R,R)-179 with aldehydes (p. 144) was followed. The diastereomeric ratio of the crude product residue was determined to be 83:17 by HPLC analysis (Agilent Extend-C18, 85:15→65:35 water:acetonitrile + 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid, 0.5 mL/min, λ = 220 nm, tR (minor) = 16.2 min, tR, tR (major) = 19.2 min). The residue was purified by flash column chromatography (3→5% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.3→0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution, followed by a second column of 7% methanol–ethyl acetate + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution) to provide the title compound as a white foam (257 mg, 72%). Mp = 48–50 ºC. TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution): Rf = 0.25 (UV, PMA). 1H NMR (10:1 ratio of rotamers; major rotamer reported, 500 MHz, CDCl3), δ: 7.41 (d, 2H, J = 7.3 Hz) 7.29–7.20 (m, 8H), 5.94 (d, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz), 5.33 (d, 1H, J = 9.3 Hz), 3.64 (m, 1H), 3.51 (d, 1H, J = 4.9 Hz), 2.98 (s, 3H), 1.50–1.44 (m, 1H), 1.42–1.37 (m, 1H), 1.35–1.28 (m, 1H), 1.25–1.18 (m, 1H), 0.87 (t, 3H, J = 6.8 Hz). 13C NMR (major rotamer reported, 125 MHz, CDCl3), δ: 176.1, 141.3, 136.6, 128.5, 128.4, 128.3, 127.8, 127.7, 127.0, 72.7, 72.0, 63.7, 55.0, 35.1, 32.7, 19.1, 14.0. FTIR (neat), cm⁻¹: 3366 (br), 3032 (m), 2872 (m), 1616 (s), 1327 (s), 909 (s), 729 (s), 696 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C21H28N2O3 + H)⁺: 357.2173; Found: 357.2175.
Aldol adduct 183.

The general procedure for aldolization of pseudoephedrine glycinamide (R,R)-179 with aldehydes (p. 144) was followed. The diastereomeric ratio of the crude product residue was determined to be 86:14 by HPLC analysis (Agilent Extend-C18, 85:15→65:35 water:acetonitrile + 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid, 0.5 mL/min, λ = 220 nm, tR (minor) = 16.0 min, tR (major) = 17.0 min). The residue was purified by flash column chromatography (2→7% methanol–ethyl acetate + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution) to provide the title compound as a white foam (275 mg, 77%). Mp = 129–131 °C. TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution): Rf = 0.44 (UV, PMA). 1H NMR (6:1 ratio of rotamers; major rotamer reported, 500 MHz, CDCl3), δ: 7.36 (d, 2H, J = 7.3 Hz) 7.24–7.15 (m, 8H), 5.86 (d, 1H, J = 8.7 Hz), 5.32 (d, 1H, J = 9.2 Hz), 3.63 (d, 1H, J = 4.1 Hz), 3.31 (dd, 1H, J = 6.9 Hz, 4.1 Hz), 2.93 (s, 3H), 1.66 (m, 1H), 0.92 (d, 3H, J = 6.4 Hz), 0.87 (d, 3H, J = 6.9 Hz). 13C NMR (major rotamer reported, 125 MHz, CDCl3), δ: 175.9, 141.3, 136.5, 128.5, 128.3, 128.2, 127.6, 127.5, 127.1, 76.6, 72.3, 63.3, 52.2, 32.2, 29.8, 19.3, 18.1. FTIR (neat), cm⁻¹: 3362 (br), 2961 (s), 1620 (m), 1452 (s), 1057 (s), 909 (s), 729 (s), 698 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C21H28N2O3 + Na)⁺: 379.1992; Found: 379.1989.
Aldol adduct 184.

The general procedure for aldolization of pseudoephedrine glycinamide (R,R)-179 with aldehydes (p. 144) was followed. The diastereomeric ratio of the crude product residue was determined to be 89:11 by $^1$H NMR. The residue was purified by flash column chromatography (1→6% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution) to provide the title compound as a white foam (273 mg, 66%). Mp = 51–53 °C. TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution): $R_f$ = 0.39 (UV, PMA). $^1$H NMR (12:1 ratio of rotamers; major rotamer reported, 500 MHz, CDCl$_3$), δ: 7.38 (d, 2H, $J$ = 7.4 Hz) 7.31–7.21 (m, 8H), 5.65 (d, 1H, $J$ = 7.9 Hz), 5.44 (d, 1H, $J$ = 8.3 Hz), 4.12 (m, 1H), 4.04–3.96 (m, 2H), 3.90 (br s, 1H), 3.47 (d, 1H, $J$ = 8.3 Hz), 3.01 (s, 3H), 1.33 (s, 3H), 1.32 (s, 3H). $^{13}$C NMR (major rotamer reported, 125 MHz, CDCl$_3$), δ: 175.9, 141.3, 136.4, 128.6, 128.4, 128.3, 127.8, 127.7, 126.9, 109.3, 74.7, 73.0, 72.9, 67.6, 64.6, 51.2, 33.0, 26.6, 25.1. FTIR (neat), cm$^{-1}$: 3364 (br), 3063 (m), 2986 (m), 1626 (s), 1211 (s), 1061 (s), 729 (s), 698 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C$_{23}$H$_{30}$N$_2$O$_5$ + Na)$^+$; 437.2047. Found: 437.2026.
Aldol adduct 185.

The general procedure for aldolization of pseudoephedrine glycaminide \((R,R)-179\) with aldehydes (p. 144) was followed. The diastereomeric ratio of the crude product residue was determined to be 85:15 by HPLC analysis (Agilent Extend-C18, 85:15→65:35 water:acetonitrile + 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid, 0.5 mL/min, \(\lambda = 220\) nm, \(t_R\) (minor) = 19.2 min, \(t_R\) (minor) = 21.3 min, \(t_R\) (major) = 22.2 min). The residue was purified by flash column chromatography (2→5% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution) to provide the title compound as a white foam (311 mg, 80%). Mp = 63–65 \(^\circ\)C. TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution): \(R_f = 0.35\) (UV, PMA). \(^1\)H NMR (4:1 ratio of rotamers; asterisk (*) denotes minor rotamer, 500 MHz, CDCl\(_3\)), \(\delta:\) 7.47* (d, 3H, \(J = 7.3\) Hz), 7.34 (d, 3H, \(J = 8.0\) Hz), 7.25–7.14 (m, 8H), 7.12–7.08 (m, 2H), 7.04–7.01 (m, 2H), 5.98 (d, 1H, \(J = 9.1\) Hz), 5.35* (br s, 1H), 5.19 (dd, 1H, \(J = 9.0\) Hz, 5.1 Hz), 4.77* (br s, 1H), 4.61 (dd, 1H, \(J = 7.0\) Hz, 3.0 Hz), 3.61 (dd, 1H, \(J = 7.0\) Hz, 4.2 Hz), 3.39* (d, 1H, \(J = 2.0\) Hz), 2.92* (br s, 3H), 2.45 (s, 3H). \(^{13}\)C NMR (major rotamer reported, 125 MHz, CDCl\(_3\)), \(\delta:\) 174.8, 141.1, 140.1, 136.1, 128.7, 128.7, 128.3, 128.2, 127.7, 127.6, 127.4, 127.2, 126.3, 74.8, 72.3, 61.9, 57.9, 30.8. FTIR (neat), cm\(^{-1}\): 3366 (br), 3032 (m), 1618 (s), 1452 (s), 1051 (s), 907 (s), 727 (s), 696 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C\(_{24}\)H\(_{26}\)N\(_2\)O\(_3\) + Na):\(^+\):413.1836; Found: 413.1839.
Aldol adduct 186.

The general procedure for aldolization of pseudoephedrine glycineamide (R,R)-179 with aldehydes (p. 144) was followed. The diastereomeric ratio of the crude product residue was determined to be 79:21 by HPLC analysis (Agilent Extend-C18, 85:15 → 65:35 water:acetonitrile + 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid, 0.5 mL/min, λ = 220 nm, tR (minor) = 14.1 min, tR (minor) = 15.5 min, tR (major) = 17.1 min). The residue was purified by flash column chromatography (1 → 10% methanol–ethyl acetate + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution) to provide the title compound as a white foam (240 mg, 63%). Mp = 64–66 °C. TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution): Rf = 0.30 (UV, PMA). 1H NMR (6:1 ratio of rotamers; major rotamer reported, 500 MHz, CDCl3), δ: 7.36 (d, 2H, J = 7.3 Hz), 7.25–7.11 (m, 10H), 6.19 (s, 1H), 5.95 (d, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz), 5.27 (d, 1H, J = 8.8 Hz), 4.70 (d, 1H, J = 6.8 Hz), 4.01 (d, 1H, J = 6.8 Hz), 3.22 (br s, 2H), 2.71 (s, 3H). 13C NMR (125 MHz, CDCl3), δ: 174.3, 152.8, 141.8, 141.1, 136.2, 128.7, 128.3, 128.1, 127.7, 127.4, 127.3, 110.2, 107.9, 72.1, 68.9, 62.2, 55.2, 30.9. FTIR (neat), cm⁻¹: 3356 (br), 3032 (m), 2974 (m), 1624 (s), 1059 (s), 909 (s), 727 (s), 698 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C22H24N2O4 + Na)⁺: 403.1628; Found: 403.1612.
Aldol adduct 187.

The general procedure for aldolization of pseudoephedrine glycinamide (R,R)-179 with aldehydes (p. 144) was followed with the exception that the reaction was performed on a 2 mmol scale. The diastereomeric ratio of the crude product residue was determined to be 84:16 by HPLC analysis (Agilent Extend-C18, 82:18→72:28 water:acetonitrile + 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid, 0.5 mL/min, λ = 220 nm, t_R (minor) = 12.3 min, t_R (minor) = 24.2 min, t_R (major) = 25.5 min). The residue was purified by flash column chromatography (2→6% methanol–ethyl acetate + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution) to provide the title compound as a yellow solid (681 mg, 78%). M_p = 127–129 °C. TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution): R_f = 0.40 (UV, PMA). \(^1\)H NMR (9:1 ratio of rotamers; major rotamer reported, 500 MHz, CD_3OD), \(\delta\): 7.74 (d, 2H, \(J = 8.8\) Hz), 7.33 (d, 2H, \(J = 8.8\) Hz), 7.28 (d, 2H, \(J = 6.8\) Hz), 7.17–7.09 (m, 6H), 7.02 (d, 2H, \(J = 7.3\) Hz), 5.89 (d, 1H, \(J = 10.2\) Hz), 5.18 (d, 1H, \(J = 10.2\) Hz), 4.62 (d, 1H, \(J = 8.8\) Hz), 3.89 (d, 1H, \(J = 8.3\) Hz), 2.64 (s, 3H). \(^{13}\)C NMR (125 MHz, CD_3OD), \(\delta\): 174.8, 149.8, 148.5, 142.8, 137.8, 130.3, 129.1, 129.1, 128.8, 128.8, 128.7, 128.7, 124.2, 77.2, 73.0, 63.3, 59.0, 30.8. FTIR (neat), cm\(^{-1}\): 3354 (br), 3032 (m), 2859 (s), 1622 (s), 1519 (s), 1346 (s), 908 (s), 727 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C_{24}H_{25}N_{3}O_{5} + Na)^+: 458.1686; Found: 458.1677.
Aldol adduct 188.

The general procedure for aldolization of pseudoephenamine glycinamide \((R,R)\)-179 with aldehydes (p. 144) was followed with the exceptions that the reaction was performed on a 2 mmol scale and that the electrophile was dissolved in 5 mL of tetrahydrofuran (0.2 M) due to the poor solubility of the starting aldehyde in tetrahydrofuran. The diastereomeric ratio of the crude product residue was determined to be 81:19 by \(^1\)H NMR analysis. The residue was purified by flash column chromatography (2→4% methanol–ethyl acetate + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution) to provide the title compound as a white solid (295 mg, 63%). Mp = 136–138 °C. TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution): \(R_f = 0.26\) (UV, PMA). \(^1\)H NMR (8:1 ratio of rotamers; major rotamer reported, 500 MHz, CD\(_3\)OD), \(\delta\): 7.49 (d, 2H, \(J = 8.8\) Hz), 7.37 (d, 2H, \(J = 8.3\) Hz), 7.32 (d, 2H, \(J = 8.3\) Hz), 7.21–7.09 (m, 8H), 5.97 (d, 1H, \(J = 10.2\) Hz), 5.21 (d, 1H, \(J = 9.8\) Hz), 4.61 (d, 1H, \(J = 8.3\) Hz), 3.83 (d, 1H, \(J = 8.3\) Hz), 2.95 (s, 3H), 2.54 (s, 3H). \(^{13}\)C NMR (125 MHz, CD\(_3\)OD), \(\delta\): 174.9, 148.8, 142.9, 141.1, 137.8, 130.4, 129.4, 129.1, 128.8, 128.8, 128.7, 128.6, 128.2, 76.8, 72.9, 63.2, 59.1, 44.5, 30.6. FTIR (neat), cm\(^{-1}\): 3291 (br), 3063 (m), 2924 (s), 1622 (s), 1304 (s), 1148 (s), 700 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for \((C_{25}H_{28}N_2O_5S + Na)^+\): 491.1611; Found: 491.1635.
Aldol adduct 189.

The general procedure for aldolization of pseudoephedrine glycinamide (R,R)-179 with aldehydes (p. 144) was followed. The diastereomeric ratio of the crude product residue was determined to be 89:11 by $^1$H NMR. The residue was purified by flash column chromatography (2→10% methanol–ethyl acetate + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution) to provide the title compound as a white foam (398 mg, 75%). Mp = 94–97 ºC. TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution): $R_f$ = 0.38 (UV, PMA). $^1$H NMR (10:1 ratio of rotamers; major rotamer reported, 500 MHz, CD$_3$OD), $\delta$: 7.44–7.32 (m, 8H), 7.20–7.12 (m, 6H), 7.01 (d, 2H, $J$ = 8.3 Hz), 6.85 (dd, 1H, $J$ = 8.3 Hz, 2.0 Hz), 6.52 (d, 1H, $J$ = 8.8 Hz), 5.96 (d, 1H, $J$ = 9.8 Hz), 5.23 (d, 1H, $J$ = 9.8 Hz), 4.98 (dd, 2H, $J$ = 18.4 Hz, 12.2 Hz), 4.45 (d, 1H, $J$ = 8.8 Hz), 3.82 (d, 1H, $J$ = 8.3 Hz), 2.63 (s, 3H). $^{13}$C NMR (125 MHz, CD$_3$OD), $\delta$: 175.0, 155.0, 142.9, 138.1, 137.8, 135.8, 130.3, 129.6, 129.4, 129.2, 129.0, 128.8, 128.7, 128.5, 128.2, 127.4, 123.8, 114.7, 76.7, 73.0, 71.6, 62.8, 59.1, 30.9. FTIR (neat), cm$^{-1}$: 3356 (br), 3032 (m), 2930 (m), 1616 (s), 1497 (s), 1256 (s), 1059 (s), 698 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C$_{31}$H$_{31}$ClN$_2$O$_4$ + H)$^+$: 531.2051; Found: 531.2059.
Aldol adduct 190.

The general procedure for aldolization of pseudoephedrine glycinamide (R,R)-179 with aldehydes (p. 144) was followed.

The diastereomeric ratio of the crude product residue was determined to be 83:17 by $^1$H NMR. The residue was purified by flash column chromatography (1→5% methanol–ethyl acetate + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution) to provide the title compound as a white foam (372 mg, 75%). 

Mp = 56–58 ºC. TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution): $R_f$ = 0.33 (UV, PMA). $^1$H NMR (2:1 ratio of rotamers; asterisk (*) denotes minor rotamer peaks, 500 MHz, CDCl$_3$), $\delta$: 7.64* (d, 2H, $J = 7.8$ Hz) 7.38–7.19 (m, 10H), 5.88 (d, 1H, $J = 8.3$ Hz), 5.58* (br s, 1H), 5.52* (d, 1H, $J = 4.9$ Hz), 5.37 (d, 1H, $J = 8.8$ Hz), 4.61 (d, 1H, $J = 4.4$ Hz), 4.34* (br s, 1H), 3.81 (d, 1H, $J = 3.9$ Hz), 3.06 (s, 3H), 2.96* (br s, 1H), 2.84* (s, 3H), 1.11–1.00 (m, 21H). $^{13}$C NMR (2:1 rotamer ratio, asterisk (*) denotes minor rotamer peaks, 125 MHz, CDCl$_3$), $\delta$: 174.8*, 174.0, 141.7*, 141.1, 136.9*, 136.3, 128.9*, 128.7, 128.6*, 128.5*, 128.5, 128.4, 128.1*, 128.1, 127.9, 127.7*, 127.1, 126.6*, 105.6*, 105.3, 87.0, 85.8*, 73.8*, 72.9, 65.1*, 64.2, 64.0, 56.1, 55.2*, 32.9, 18.6, 18.5, 11.1*, 11.0*. FTIR (neat), cm$^{-1}$: 3366 (br), 3032 (m), 2864 (s), 1626 (s), 1057 (s), 909 (s), 731 (s), 698 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C$_{29}$H$_{42}$N$_2$O$_3$Si + H)$^+$: 495.3037; Found: 495.3029.
Aldol adduct 191.

The general procedure for aldolization of pseudoephedrine glycine amide (R,R)-179 with aldehydes (p. 144) was followed. The diastereomeric ratio of the crude product residue was determined to be 79:21 by $^1$H NMR. The residue was purified by flash column chromatography (2→7% methanol–ethyl acetate + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution) to provide the title compound as a white foam (335 mg, 78%). TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution): $R_f = 0.45$ (UV, PMA). $^1$H NMR (5:1 ratio of rotamers; major rotamer reported, 500 MHz, CDCl$_3$), $\delta$: 7.39 (d, 2H, $J = 8.2$ Hz), 7.27–7.15 (m, 8H), 7.11–7.01 (m, 5H), 6.52 (s, 1H), 6.09 (d, 1H, $J = 9.2$ Hz), 5.27 (d, 1H, $J = 9.2$ Hz), 4.19 (d, 1H, $J = 6.4$ Hz), 3.70 (d, 1H, $J = 6.4$ Hz), 2.93 (s, 3H), 1.79 (s, 3H). $^{13}$C NMR (125 MHz, CDCl$_3$), $\delta$: 175.4, 141.2, 137.1, 136.2, 135.5, 129.0, 128.7, 128.4, 128.0, 127.9, 127.8, 127.6, 127.1, 126.4, 77.1, 72.7, 62.6, 53.7, 31.9, 14.5. FTIR (neat), cm$^{-1}$: 3362 (br), 3032 (m), 1622 (s), 1452 (s), 1057 (s), 907 (s), 727 (s), 696 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C$_{27}$H$_{30}$N$_2$O$_3$ + Na)$^+$: 453.2149; Found: 453.2156.
General Procedure for Aldolization of Pseudoephenamine Glycinamide (179) with Ketones.

![Chemical Structure](image)

A 25-mL round-bottom flask equipped with a stir bar was charged with anhydrous lithium chloride (331 mg, 7.80 mmol, 7.8 equiv). The reaction vessel was heated with a gentle flame under vacuum (0.1 mmHg) for 2 minutes. After cooling to 23 ºC in vacuo, the flask was backfilled with argon and (R,R)-pseudoephenamine glycinamide (370 mg, 1.30 mmol, 1.3 equiv) was added. Tetrahydrofuran (6.5 mL) was added by syringe and the reaction mixture was stirred at ambient temperature until pseudoephenamine glycinamide had dissolved (~5 minutes); lithium chloride does not completely dissolve. The resulting suspension was cooled to –78 ºC in a dry ice-acetone cooling bath and a freshly-prepared solution of lithium hexamethyldisilazide in tetrahydrofuran (1.0 M, 2.5 mL, 2.5 mmol, 2.5 equiv) was added dropwise. After 5 minutes, the reaction vessel was transferred to an ice-water bath and stirring continued for 25 minutes. The vessel was re-cooled to –78 ºC, and a solution of ketone in tetrahydrofuran (1.0 M, 1.0 mL, 1.0 mmol, 1.0 equiv) was added dropwise. After 30 minutes at –78 ºC, the reaction vessel was transferred to an ice-water cooling bath and stirring continued at to 0 ºC. Once the ketone was completely consumed as indicated by TLC (usually ≤ 30 minutes), the mixture was partitioned between half-saturated aqueous ammonium chloride solution (20 mL) and ethyl acetate (25 mL). The layers were separated, and the aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (2 × 25 mL). The combined organic extracts were washed with saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution (45 mL) and dried over sodium sulfate. The dried solution was filtered, and the filtrate was
concentrated. The diastereomeric ratio of the crude product was determined by NMR or HPLC analysis (*vide infra*). The residue was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel.

Aldol adduct **192**.

The general procedure for aldolization of pseudoephedrine glycinamide (**R,R**-179 with ketones (p. 156) was followed with the exception that the reaction was performed on a 3 mmol scale. The diastereomeric ratio of the crude product residue was determined to be 95:5 by HPLC analysis (Agilent Extend-C18, 85:15→65:35 water:acetonitrile + 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid, 0.5 mL/min, λ = 220 nm, t<sub>R</sub> (major) = 14.4 min, t<sub>R</sub> (minor) = 18.0 min). The residue was purified by flash column chromatography (2→4% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.2→0.4% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution) to provide both the minor diastereomer (characterized below) and the title compound as a white foam (746 mg, 73%). TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution): R<sub>f</sub> = 0.49 (UV, PMA). ¹H NMR (6:1 ratio of rotamers; major rotamer reported, 500 MHz, CDCl₃), δ: 7.41 (d, 2H, J = 7.7 Hz), 7.29–7.20 (m, 8H), 6.03 (d, 1H, J = 8.6 Hz), 5.32 (d, 1H, J = 8.7 Hz), 3.42 (s, 1H), 3.00 (s, 3H), 1.15 (s, 3H), 1.11 (s, 3H). ¹³C NMR (major rotamer reported, 125 MHz, CDCl₃), δ: 176.6, 142.3, 136.5, 128.6, 128.4, 128.3, 127.8, 127.6, 127.0, 72.7, 71.7, 62.9, 56.9, 32.9, 26.9, 25.6. FTIR (neat), cm⁻¹: 3366 (br), 3032 (m), 2974 (s), 1614 (s), 1454 (m), 910 (s), 729 (s) 698 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C<sub>20</sub>H<sub>26</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> + H)<sup>+</sup>: 343.2016; Found: 343.2026.
The minor diastereomer was isolated as a white foam (19 mg, 5%). TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution): R_f = 0.60 (UV, PMA).

^1^H NMR (1:1 ratio of rotamers, 500 MHz, CDCl_3), δ: 7.41 (d, 2H, J = 7.4 Hz), 7.33–7.19 (m, 8H), 6.08 (d, 1H, J = 8.4 Hz), 5.36 (d, 1H, J = 8.4 Hz), 5.35 (d, 1H, J = 10.0 Hz), 5.22 (d, 1H, J = 10.0 Hz), 3.71 (s, 1H), 3.52 (s, 1H), 3.04 (s, 3H), 2.92 (s, 3H), 1.31 (s, 3H), 1.29 (s, 3H), 1.19 (s, 3H), 1.12 (s, 3H). ^13^C NMR (1:1 ratio of rotamers; asterisk (*) denotes rotamer peaks, 125 MHz, CDCl_3), δ: 176.2*, 174.7, 142.0*, 141.0, 136.5*, 135.7, 128.7*, 128.6 (2C), 128.5*, 128.5 (2C), 128.2, 127.9*, 127.9, 127.6*, 127.1, 127.0*, 72.8*, 72.5, 71.8*, 71.6, 65.7, 62.5*, 57.6, 56.3*, 32.7*, 28.0, 27.5, 27.3*, 25.9, 24.9*. FTIR (neat), cm⁻¹: 3362 (br), 3032 (m), 2974 (s), 1616 (s), 1452 (m), 910 (s), 729 (s) 698 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C_{20}H_{28}N_{2}O_{3} + H)^+: 343.2016; Found: 343.2027.
Aldol adduct \textbf{193}.

The general procedure for aldolization of pseudoephedrine glycinamide (\textit{R,R})-\textbf{179} with ketones (p. 156) was followed. The diastereomeric ratio of the crude product residue was determined to be 95:5 by HPLC analysis (Agilent Extend-C18, 85:15→65:35 water:acetonitrile + 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid, 0.5 mL/min, \( \lambda = 220 \) nm, \( t_R \) (minor) = 17.0 min, \( t_R \) (major) = 19.4 min). The residue was purified by flash column chromatography (1→3% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution) to provide both the minor diastereomer (characterized below) and the title compound as a white foam (300 mg, 81%). Mp = 51–53 °C. TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution): \( R_f = 0.47 \) (UV, PMA). \textsuperscript{1}H NMR (12:1 ratio of rotamers; major rotamer reported, 500 MHz, CDCl\textsubscript{3}), \( \delta \): 7.41 (d, 2H, \( J = 7.3 \) Hz), 7.32–7.20 (m, 8H), 5.98 (d, 1H, \( J = 8.3 \) Hz), 5.34 (d, 1H, \( J = 8.3 \) Hz), 3.53 (s, 1H), 3.01 (s, 3H), 1.59–1.50 (m, 2H), 1.38–1.27 (m, 2H), 0.80–0.76 (m, 6H). \textsuperscript{13}C NMR (125 MHz, CDCl\textsubscript{3}), \( \delta \): 177.2, 141.3, 136.5, 128.5, 128.4, 128.4, 127.8, 127.7, 127.0, 76.7, 72.7, 62.8, 53.1, 32.9, 27.8, 25.2, 7.6, 7.5. FTIR (neat), cm\textsuperscript{-1}: 3366 (br), 3032 (m), 2969 (s), 1610 (s), 1452 (m), 908 (s), 727 (s) 698 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C\textsubscript{22}H\textsubscript{30}N\textsubscript{2}O\textsubscript{3} + Na\textsuperscript{+}): 393.2149; Found: 393.2129.
The minor diastereomer was isolated was a white foam (10 mg, 3%).

TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution): R_f = 0.53 (UV, PMA). ^1H NMR (1.5:1 ratio of rotamers; asterisk (*) denotes minor rotamer peaks, 500 MHz, CDCl_3), δ: 7.42 (d, 2H, J = 7.8 Hz), 7.34–7.18 (m, 8H), 6.00* (d, 1H, J = 7.8 Hz), 5.42* (d, 1H, J = 7.8 Hz), 5.33 (d, 1H, J = 10.3 Hz), 5.22 (d, 1H, J = 10.3 Hz), 3.84 (s, 1H), 3.55* (s, 1H), 3.05* (s, 3H), 2.91 (s, 3H), 1.73–1.67 (m, 2H), 1.58–1.48 (m, 2H), 1.29–1.23* (m, 2H), 0.91 (m, 3H), 0.81* (t, 3H, J = 7.3 Hz). ^13C NMR (1.5:1 ratio of rotamers; asterisk (*) denotes minor rotamer peaks, 125 MHz, CDCl_3), δ: 177.1*, 174.8, 142.2, 141.1*, 136.7*, 135.7, 128.8, 128.6, 128.6*, 128.6, 128.3, 128.3*, 127.9*, 127.8, 127.7*, 127.0, 126.7, 76.2*, 75.8, 73.2*, 71.8, 65.9, 62.6*, 53.3*, 52.7, 33.2, 29.8*, 28.0*, 27.7, 25.6, 25.3*, 7.9, 7.7, 7.6*, 7.5*. FTIR (neat), cm⁻¹: 3374 (br), 3032 (m), 2967 (s), 1608 (s), 1452 (m), 910 (s), 731 (s) 698 (s); HRMS (ESI): Caled for (C_{22}H_{30}N_{2}O_{3} + Na)^+: 393.2149; Found: 393.2159.
Aldol adduct 194.

The general procedure for aldolization of pseudoephedrine glycinamide \((R,R)-179\) with ketones (p. 156) was followed. The diastereomeric ratio of the crude product residue was determined to be 94:6 by HPLC analysis (Agilent Extend-C18, 85:15→65:35 water:acetonitrile + 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid, 0.5 mL/min, \(\lambda = 220\) nm, \(t_R\) (minor) = 12.9 min, \(t_R\) (major) = 15.3 min). The residue was purified by flash column chromatography (1→3% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution) to provide both the minor diastereomer (characterized below) and the title compound as a white foam (264 mg, 70%). Mp = 46–49 °C. TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution): \(R_f = 0.37\) (UV, PMA).

\(^1\)H NMR (3:1 ratio of rotamers; asterisk (*) denotes minor rotamer peaks, 500 MHz, CD\(_3\)OD), \(\delta:\) 7.41 (d, 2H, \(J = 8.3\) Hz), 7.38* (d, 2H, \(J = 8.3\) Hz), 7.31 (d, 2H, \(J = 6.8\) Hz), 7.25–7.16 (m, 6H), 6.02 (d, 1H, \(J = 9.3\) Hz), 5.55* (d, 1H, \(J = 9.7\) Hz), 5.42 (d, 1H, \(J = 9.3\) Hz), 5.32* (d, 1H, \(J = 9.7\) Hz), 4.78–4.60* (m, 3H), 4.60–4.54 (m, 1H), 4.50–4.44 (m, 2H), 4.39–4.34 (m, 1H), 4.27–4.25* (m, 2H), 4.08 (s, 1H), 3.16 (s, 3H), 3.03* (s, 3H).

\(^{13}\)C NMR (3:1 ratio of rotamers; asterisk (*) denotes minor rotamer peaks, 125 MHz, CD\(_3\)OD), \(\delta:\) 175.8, 175.7*, 143.1, 143.0*, 138.3, 137.9*, 130.1, 129.9*, 129.5*, 129.3*, 129.3, 129.2, 129.0*, 128.9*, 128.8, 128.7, 128.7, 128.6*, 84.8 (dd, \(J = 173.0\) Hz, 5.5 Hz), 84.2 (dd, \(J = 172.1\) Hz, 3.7 Hz), 76.7* (dd, \(J = 17.4\) Hz, 16.5 Hz), 75.6 (dd, \(J = 17.4\) Hz, 16.5 Hz), 73.5*, 73.3, 67.1*, 63.6, 52.4*, 52.3, 32.3. FTIR (neat), cm\(^{-1}\): 3364 (br), 3032 (m), 2969 (m), 1613 (s), 1452 (s), 1017 (s), 909 (s), 698 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for \((C_{20}H_{24}F_{2}N_{2}O_{3} + Na)^+\): 401.1647; Found: 401.1634.
The minor diastereomer was isolated as a white foam (19 mg, 5%). TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution): $R_f = 0.37$ (UV, PMA). $^1$H NMR (1.5:1 ratio of rotamers; asterisk (*) denotes minor rotamer peaks, 500 MHz, CD$_3$OD), $\delta$: 7.48* (d, 1H, $J = 7.2$ Hz), 7.44 (d, 2H, $J = 7.4$ Hz), 7.37* (d, 2H, $J = 7.44$ Hz), 7.29–7.16 (m, 8H), 6.16 (d, 1H, $J = 9.3$ Hz), 5.55* (d, 1H, $J = 8.6$ Hz), 5.41* (d, 1H, $J = 8.6$ Hz), 5.40 (d, 1H, $J = 9.3$ Hz), 4.71–4.67* (m, 2H), 4.63–4.57 (m, 2H), 4.54–4.49 (m, 1H), 4.48* (dd, 1H, $J = 9.8$ Hz, 2.0 Hz), 4.45–4.39 (m, 1H), 4.34* (br s, 1H) 4.32* (dd, 1H, $J = 9.8$ Hz, 1.8 Hz), 4.10 (br s, 1H), 3.13 (s, 3H), 2.85* (s, 3H). $^{13}$C NMR (asterisk (*) denotes minor rotamer peaks, 125 MHz, CD$_3$OD), $\delta$: 177.0*, 175.5, 143.4*, 143.0, 137.9, 137.4*, 130.7, 130.3, 130.0*, 129.9*, 129.5*, 129.3, 129.3, 129.2*, 128.9*, 128.7*, 128.7, 128.6, 84.3 (dd, $J = 173.0$ Hz, 5.5 Hz), 84.1 (dd, $J = 172.1$ Hz, 3.7 Hz), 75.8 (app t, $J = 16.5$ Hz), 72.9, 71.6*, 66.6, 63.2*, 52.3, 52.1*, 31.9, 26.0*. FTIR (neat), cm$^{-1}$: 3374 (br), 3032 (m), 2924 (m), 1614 (s), 1454 (s), 1018 (s), 976 (s), 700 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C$_{20}$H$_{24}$F$_2$N$_2$O$_3$ + Na)$^+$: 401.1647; Found: 401.1639.
Aldol adduct 195.

The general procedure for aldolization of pseudoephedrine glycinate (R,R)-179 with ketones (p. 156) was followed. The diastereomeric ratio of the crude product residue was determined to be 94:6 by HPLC analysis (Agilent Extend-C18, 85:15→65:35 water:acetonitrile + 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid, 0.5 mL/min, $\lambda$ = 220 nm, $t_R$ (minor) = 19.5 min, $t_R$ (major) = 21.5 min, $t_R$ (minor) = 24.3 min). The residue was purified by flash column chromatography (2→4% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.2→0.4% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution) to provide the title compound as a white foam (302 mg, 82%). Mp = 112–114 °C. TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution): $R_f$ = 0.28 (UV, PMA). $^1$H NMR (6:1 ratio of rotamers; major rotamer reported, 500 MHz, CDCl$_3$), $\delta$: 7.43 (d, 2H, $J = 7.8$ Hz), 7.36–7.23 (m, 8H), 5.99 (d, 1H, $J = 8.3$ Hz), 5.40 (d, 1H, $J = 8.3$ Hz), 4.78 (br s, 1H), 3.62 (s, 1H), 3.03 (s, 3H), 2.10 (septet, 1H, $J = 6.8$ Hz), 0.95 (d, 3H, $J = 6.8$ Hz), 0.89 (s, 3H), 0.80 (d, 3H, $J = 6.8$ Hz). $^{13}$C NMR (125 MHz, CDCl$_3$), $\delta$: 177.6, 141.2, 136.4, 128.9, 128.6, 128.5, 127.9, 127.9, 126.9, 75.4, 73.0, 62.8, 53.3, 33.0, 32.0, 18.5, 17.5, 16.2. FTIR (neat), cm$^{-1}$: 3375 (br), 3032 (m), 2962 (m), 1611 (s), 1454 (s), 1096 (s), 910 (s), 698 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C$_{22}$H$_{30}$N$_2$O$_3$ + Na)$^+$: 393.2149; Found: 393.2163.
Aldol adduct 196.

The general procedure for aldolization of pseudoephedrine glycinamide (R,R)-179 with ketones (p. 156) was followed. The diastereomeric ratio of the crude product residue was determined to be 88:12 by HPLC analysis (Agilent Extend-C18, 85:15→65:35 water:acetonitrile + 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid, 0.5 mL/min, λ = 220 nm, t_R (minor) = 22.5 min, t_R (major) = 24.3 min). The residue was purified by flash column chromatography (2→4% methanol–ethyl acetate + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution, followed by 2→4% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.2→0.4% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution) to provide the title compound as a white foam (350 mg, 86%). TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution): R_f = 0.54 (UV, PMA). ^1H NMR (4:1 ratio of rotamers; major rotamer reported, 500 MHz, CDCl_3), δ: 7.39–7.35 (m, 5H), 7.25–7.18 (m, 10H), 6.09 (d, 1H, J = 9.3 Hz), 5.22 (d, 1H, J = 9.3 Hz), 3.65 (s, 1H), 2.78 (s, 3H), 1.43 (s, 3H). ^13C NMR (major rotamer reported, 125 MHz, CDCl_3), δ: 175.7, 144.3, 141.0, 136.3, 128.7, 128.4, 128.3, 128.2, 127.8, 127.7, 127.2, 126.9, 125.3, 75.3, 72.4, 62.5, 58.2, 31.8, 26.1. FTIR (neat), cm⁻¹: 3368 (br), 3032 (m), 2980 (s), 1615 (s), 1449 (m), 909 (s), 729 (s) 698 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C_{25}H_{28}N_{2}O_{3} + Na)^+: 427.1992; Found: 427.2010.
Aldol adduct 197.

The general procedure for aldolization of pseudoephedrine glycinamide \((R,R)-179\) with ketones (p. 156) was followed. The diastereomeric ratio of the crude product residue was determined to be 79:21 by HPLC analysis (Agilent Extend-C18, 73:27 water:acetonitrile + 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid, 0.5 mL/min, \(\lambda = 220\) nm, \(t_R\) (minor) = 23.7 min, \(t_R\) (minor) = 32.7 min, \(t_R\) (major) = 36.8 min). The residue was purified by flash column chromatography (1→3% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution, followed by 10% methanol–ethyl acetate + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution) to provide the title compound as a white foam (238 mg, 55%). Mp = 70–72 °C. TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution): \(R_f = 0.30\) (UV, PMA). \(^1\)H NMR (6:1 ratio of rotamers; major rotamer reported, 500 MHz, CDCl\(_3\)), \(\delta:\) 7.40 (d, 2H, \(J = 7.8\) Hz), 7.34–7.18 (m, 13H), 6.73 (d, 1H, \(J = 16.1\) Hz), 6.07 (d, 1H, \(J = 8.8\) Hz), 5.93 (d, 1H, \(J = 16.1\) Hz), 5.31 (d, 1H, \(J = 8.8\) Hz), 3.63 (s, 1H), 3.00 (s, 3H), 1.26 (s, 3H). \(^13\)C NMR (125 MHz, CDCl\(_3\)), \(\delta:\) 175.3, 141.1, 136.5, 136.4, 132.1, 129.6, 128.6, 128.5, 128.5, 128.4, 127.8, 127.7, 127.5, 127.2, 126.4, 74.4, 72.3, 62.7, 56.9, 32.3, 24.8. FTIR (neat), cm\(^{-1}\): 3364 (br), 3030 (m), 2976 (m), 1616 (s), 1062 (s), 907 (s), 727 (s), 694 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C\(_{27}H_{30}N_2O_3 + H\))\(^+\): 431.2329; Found: 431.2326.
Aldol adduct 198.

The general procedure for aldolization of pseudoephedrine glycinamide (R,R)-179 with ketones (p. 156) was followed with the exception that the reaction was performed on a 15 mmol scale. The diastereomeric ratio of the crude product residue was determined to be 65:35 by ¹H NMR. The residue was purified by flash column chromatography (1 → 3% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution) to provide the title compound as a white foam (4.20 g, 54%). TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution): Rᵢ = 0.60 (UV, PMA). ¹H NMR (4:1 ratio of rotamers; major rotamer reported, 600 MHz, CD₃OD), δ: 7.41 (d, 2H, J = 7.6 Hz), 7.32 (d, 2H, J = 7.6 Hz), 7.23–7.15 (m, 6H), 6.11 (d, 1H, J = 10.0 Hz), 5.39 (d, 1H, J = 10.0 Hz), 3.99 (s, 1H), 3.76 (d, 1H, J = 9.4 Hz), 3.36 (d, 1H, J = 9.4 Hz), 3.17 (s, 3H), 1.16 (s, 3H), 1.10–1.05 (m, 21H). ¹³C NMR (major rotamer reported, 125 MHz, CD₃OD), δ: 177.0, 143.0, 138.4, 130.2, 129.3, 129.2, 128.8, 128.7, 128.7, 75.5, 73.1, 68.9, 63.3, 54.2, 31.9, 22.3, 18.5, 13.1. FTIR (neat), cm⁻¹: 3379 (br), 3032 (m), 2932 (br), 2943 (s), 1614 (s), 1462 (m), 1098 (s), 881 (s) 698 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C₂₀H₄₆N₂O₄Si₂ + Na)⁺: 537.3119; Found: 537.3111.
Aldol adduct 199.

The general procedure for aldolization of pseudoephedrine glycinamide (R,R)-179 with ketones (p. 156) was followed with the exceptions that the reaction was performed on a 5.9 mmol scale, the solution of electrophile was added at 0 °C as opposed to –78 °C and the workup was performed with water instead of half saturated aqueous ammonium chloride solution. The diastereomeric ratio of the crude product residue was determined to be $\geq$98:2 by $^1$H NMR. The residue was purified by flash column chromatography (2% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.2% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution) to provide the title compound as a white foam (3.59 g, 98%). Mp = 56–60 °C. TLC (5% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution): $R_f$ = 0.30 (UV, PMA). $^1$H NMR (15:1 ratio of rotamers; major rotamer reported, 500 MHz, CDCl$_3$), $\delta$: 7.77 (d, 2H, $J$ = 6.8 Hz), 7.70 (d, 2H, $J$ = 6.8 Hz), 7.42–7.35 (m, 8H), 7.27–7.18 (m, 8H), 6.03 (d, 1H, $J$ = 8.8 Hz), 5.31 (d, 1H, $J$ = 8.8 Hz), 4.91 (br s, 1H), 3.92 (s, 1H), 3.84 (dd, 1H, $J$ = 5.9 Hz, 4.9 Hz), 2.94 (s, 3H), 1.79–1.74 (m, 1H), 1.41–1.36 (m, 1H), 1.10 (s, 3 H), 0.98 (s, 9H). 0.58 (t, 3H, $J$ = 7.8 Hz). $^{13}$C NMR (125 MHz, CDCl$_3$), $\delta$: 177.8, 141.1, 136.6, 135.9, 135.7, 134.4, 133.1, 129.8, 129.5, 128.5, 128.4, 127.8, 127.7, 127.7, 127.4, 127.1, 76.4, 76.1, 72.7, 62.5, 52.6, 32.6, 27.0, 25.0, 19.5, 19.3, 12.1. FTIR (neat), cm$^{-1}$: 3372 (br), 3071 (m), 2934 (s), 2857 (s), 1608 (s), 1105 (m), 909 (s), 698 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcld for (C$_38$H$_4$N$_2$O$_4$Si + Na)$^+$: 647.3276; Found: 647.3278.
Hydrolysis of Aldol adduct 181, to provide carboxylate 203.

A 25-mL round bottom flask equipped with a stir bar was charged with aldol adduct 181 (700 mg, 1.89 mmol, 1 equiv). A 1:1 mixture of tetrahydrofuran:methanol (7.6 mL) was added, followed by aqueous sodium hydroxide solution (1.0 M, 1.89 mL, 1.89 mmol, 1 equiv). Reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of starting material by TLC (5% methanol–ethyl acetate + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution). After 4 h, reaction mixture was concentrated and the residue was suspended in water (20 mL) and washed with dichloromethane (2 × 20 mL). The combined organic washes were back-extracted with water (20 mL) and the aqueous extract was added to the aqueous phase. The collective aqueous phase was once again extracted with dichloromethane (10 mL) and the organic extract was added to the organic phase. The organic phase was dried over sodium sulfate. The dried organic phase was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated to recover (R,R)-pseudoephenamine (428 mg, 100%, >95% purity), which matched previously reported data.\textsuperscript{110b} The aqueous layers were combined and concentrated in vacuo to afford the sodium carboxylate 203 as a white solid (329 mg, 95%).

The enantiomeric excess of this product was determined to be ≥98% by \textsuperscript{1}H NMR comparison of the corresponding (R)- and (S)- MTPA amides.\textsuperscript{131} \textsuperscript{1}H NMR (500 MHz, CD\textsubscript{3}OD), δ: 3.61 (d, 1H, \( J = 2.4 \) Hz), 3.38 (d, 1H, \( J = 2.4 \) Hz), 0.97 (s, 9H). \textsuperscript{13}C NMR (125 MHz, CD\textsubscript{3}OD), δ: 182.3, 79.9, 57.5, 36.4, 27.1. FTIR (neat), cm\textsuperscript{-1}: 3362 (br), 1620 (s), 1377 (s), 1316 (s), 1017 (s), 934 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C\textsubscript{7}H\textsubscript{13}NO\textsubscript{3} + Na\textsuperscript{+}): 184.0944; Found: 184.0948.

Hydrolysis of Aldol adduct 182, to provide carboxylate 204.

A 25-mL round bottom flask equipped with a stir bar was charged with aldol adduct 182 (200 mg, 0.561 mmol, 1 equiv). A 1:1 mixture of tetrahydrofuran:methanol (2.2 mL) was added, followed by aqueous sodium hydroxide solution (1.0 M, 0.56 mL, 0.56 mmol, 1 equiv). Reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of starting material by TLC (5% methanol–ethyl acetate + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution). After 4 h, reaction mixture was concentrated and the residue was suspended in water (6 mL) and washed with dichloromethane (2 × 6 mL). The combined organic washes were back-extracted with water (6 mL) and the aqueous extract was added to the aqueous phase. The collective aqueous phase was once again extracted with dichloromethane (3 mL) and the organic extract was added to the organic phase. The organic phase was dried over sodium sulfate. The dried organic phase was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated to recover (R,R)-pseudoephenamine (120 mg, 94%, >95% purity), which matched previously reported data.\textsuperscript{110b} The aqueous layers were combined and concentrated in vacuo to afford the sodium carboxylate 204 as a white solid (83 mg, 87%). The enantiomeric excess of this product was determined to be ≥98% by \textsuperscript{1}H NMR comparison of the corresponding (R)- and (S)- MTPA amides.\textsuperscript{131} \textsuperscript{1}H NMR (500 MHz, CD\textsubscript{3}OD), δ: 3.73 (m, 1H), 3.12 (d, 1H, J = 4.4 Hz), 1.57–1.48 (m, 2H), 1.47–1.33 (m, 2H), 3.12 (t, 3H, J = 7.3 Hz).

\textsuperscript{13}C NMR (125 MHz, CD\textsubscript{3}OD), δ: 181.2, 74.2, 61.7, 37.1, 20.3, 14.4. FTIR (neat), cm\textsuperscript{-1}: 3271 (br), 2957 (s), 2872 (s), 1604 (s), 1416 (s), 957 (s), 721 (s), 687 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C\textsubscript{6}H\textsubscript{13}NO\textsubscript{3} + Na)\textsuperscript{+}: 170.0788; Found: 170.0796.
Hydrolysis of Aldol adduct 183, to provide carboxylate 205.

A 5-mL round bottom flask equipped with a stir bar was charged with aldol adduct 183 (42 mg, 0.118 mmol, 1 equiv). A 1:1 mixture of tetrahydrofuran:methanol (0.47 mL) was added, followed by aqueous sodium hydroxide solution (1.0 M, 0.12 mL, 0.12 mmol, 1 equiv). Reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of starting material by TLC (5% methanol–ethyl acetate + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution). After 6 h, reaction mixture was concentrated and the residue was suspended in water (2 mL) and washed with dichloromethane (2 × 4 mL). The combined organic washes were back-extracted with water (4 mL) and the aqueous extract was added to the aqueous phase. The collective aqueous phase was once again extracted with dichloromethane (2 mL) and the organic extract was added to the organic phase. The organic phase was dried over sodium sulfate. The dried organic phase was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated to recover (R,R)-pseudoephenamine (24.7 mg, 92%, >95% purity), which matched previously reported data. The aqueous layers were combined and concentrated in vacuo to afford the sodium carboxylate 205 as a white solid (18.4 mg, 92%).

The enantiomeric excess of this product was determined to be ≥98% by 1H NMR comparison of the corresponding (R)- and (S)- MTPA amides. 1H NMR (500 MHz, CD3OD), δ: 3.51 (dd, 1H, J = 7.3 Hz, 3.9 Hz), 3.30 (d, 1H, J = 3.9 Hz), 1.78 (app sxt, 1H, J = 6.8 Hz), 1.00 (d, 1H, J = 6.4 Hz), 0.95 (d, 1H, J = 6.8 Hz). 13C NMR (125 MHz, CD3OD), δ: 181.1, 79.4, 59.3, 31.8,
20.1, 18.9. FTIR (neat), cm\(^{-1}\): 3374 (br), 3140 (m), 2959 (s), 1586 (s), 1416 (s), 1063 (s), 934 (s), 700 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C\(_6\)H\(_{13}\)NO\(_3\) + Na): 170.0788; Found: 170.0796.
Hydrolysis of Aldol adduct 188, to provide carboxylate 206.

A 25-mL round bottom flask equipped with a stir bar was charged with aldol adduct 188 (300 mg, 0.640 mmol, 1 equiv). A 1:1 mixture of tetrahydrofuran:methanol (5.8 mL) was added and the vessel was cooled in an ice-water bath. Aqueous sodium hydroxide solution (1.0 M, 0.640 mL, 0.640 mmol, 1 equiv) was added. After 5 minutes, the cooling bath was removed and stirring was continued at 23 ºC. Reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of starting material by TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution). After 3.5 h, reaction mixture was concentrated and the residue was suspended in water (5 mL) and washed with dichloromethane (4 × 5 mL). The first wash with dichloromethane was not shaken vigorously in order to prevent the formation of an emulsion. The organic washes were combined and dried over sodium sulfate. The dried organic phase was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated to recover (R,R)-pseudoeephyamine (145 mg, 100%, >95% purity), which matched previously reported data. The aqueous layers were combined and concentrated in vacuo to afford the sodium carboxylate 206 as a white solid (167 mg, 93%). The enantiomeric excess of this product was determined to be ≥98% by 1H NMR comparison of the corresponding (R)- and (S)- MTPA amides. 1H NMR (500 MHz, CD3OD), δ: 7.91 (d, 2H, J = 7.8 Hz), 7.69 (d, 2H, J = 7.8 Hz), 5.07 (d, 1H, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.40 (d, 1H, J = 4.4 Hz), 3.10 (s, 3H). 13C NMR (125 MHz, CD3OD), δ: 179.5, 151.1, 140.6, 128.4, 128.2, 75.6, 63.4, 44.5.
FTIR (neat), cm$^{-1}$: 3370 (br), 2930 (m), 2074 (s), 1591 (s), 1290 (s), 1148 (s), 542 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C$_{10}$H$_{13}$NO$_5$S + Na)$^+$: 282.0412; Found: 282.0405.
Hydrolysis of Aldol adduct 189, to provide carboxylate 207.

A 100-mL round bottom flask equipped with a stir bar was charged with aldol adduct 189 (230 mg, 0.433 mmol, 1 equiv). A 1:1 mixture of tetrahydrofuran:methanol (2.1 mL) was added and the vessel was cooled in an ice-water bath. Aqueous sodium hydroxide solution (1.0 M, 0.433 mL, 0.433 mmol, 1 equiv) was added. After 5 minutes, the cooling bath was removed and stirring was continued at 23 °C. Reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of starting material by TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution). After 20 h, reaction mixture was concentrated and the residue was suspended in water (50 mL) and washed with ether (4 × 50 mL). The first wash with ether was not shaken vigorously in order to prevent the formation of an emulsion. The organic washes were combined and dried over sodium sulfate. The dried organic phase was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated to recover (R,R)-pseudoephenamine (98 mg, 100%, >95% purity), which matched previously reported data.110b The aqueous phase was then washed with dichloromethane (2 × 50 mL). The first wash with dichloromethane was not shaken vigorously in order to prevent the formation of an emulsion. The organic washes were discarded. The remaining aqueous phase was concentrated in vacuo to afford the sodium carboxylate as a white solid (140 mg, 94%). The enantiomeric excess of this product was determined to be ≥98% by 1H NMR comparison of the corresponding (R)- and (S)- MTPA amides.131 Due to poor solubility in several solvents, this product was characterized as its amine salt: To carboxylate 207 (45.5 mg, 0.132 mmol, 1 equiv)
in CD$_3$OD (0.3 mL) in an NMR test tube was added 1.0 M deuterium chloride solution (0.264 mL, 0.264 mmol, 2 equiv) and the amine salt was characterized. $^1$H NMR (500 MHz, CD$_3$OD), $\delta$: 7.55 (d, 1H, $J = 2$ Hz), 7.47 (d, 2H, $J = 7.3$ Hz), 7.39–7.31 (m, 4H), 7.17 (d, 1H, $J = 8.3$ Hz), 5.24 (d, 1H, $J = 4.4$ Hz), 5.21 (s, 2H), 4.14 (d, 1H, $J = 4.4$ Hz). $^{13}$C NMR (125 MHz, CD$_3$OD), $\delta$: 170.2, 155.1, 137.6, 133.7, 129.5, 129.1, 129.1, 128.3, 127.0, 124.1, 115.6, 71.8, 71.0, 60.1. FTIR (neat), cm$^{-1}$: 3327 (br), 3034 (m), 2926 (m), 1605 (s), 1256 (s), 1059 (s), 696 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C$_{16}$H$_{16}$ClNO$_4$ + H)$^+$: 322.0846; Found: 322.0861.
Hydrolysis of Aldol adduct 192, to provide carboxylate 208.

A 25-mL round bottom flask equipped with a stir bar was charged with aldol adduct 192 (250 mg, 0.73 mmol, 1 equiv). A 1:1 mixture of tetrahydrofuran:methanol (3.65 mL) was added, followed by aqueous sodium hydroxide solution (1.0 M, 0.73 mL, 0.73 mmol, 1 equiv). Reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of starting material by TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution). After 3 d, reaction mixture was concentrated and the residue was suspended in water (10 mL) and washed with dichloromethane (2 × 10 mL). The combined organic washes were back-extracted with water (2 mL) and the aqueous extract was added to the aqueous phase. The collective aqueous phase was once again extracted with dichloromethane (5 mL) and the organic extract was added to the organic phase. The organic phase was dried over sodium sulfate. The dried organic phase was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated to recover (R,R)-pseudoephedrine (162 mg, 98%, >95% purity), which matched previously reported data.110b The aqueous layers were combined and concentrated in vacuo to afford the sodium carboxylate 208 as a white solid (110 mg, 97%). The enantiomeric excess of this product was determined to be ≥98% by 1H NMR comparison of the corresponding (R)- and (S)-MTPA amides.131 1H NMR (500 MHz, CD3OD), δ: 3.12 (br s, 1H), 1.21 (s, 6H). 13C NMR (125 MHz, CD3OD), δ: 180.7, 72.9, 65.2, 26.9, 25.6. FTIR (neat), cm⁻¹: 3362 (br), 2972 (m), 1570 (s), 1408 (s), 1165 (s), 957 (s), 741 (s), 590 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C₅H₁₁NO₃ + Na)⁺: 156.0631; Found: 156.0635.
Protection and Neutral Hydrolysis of Aldol Adduct 196.

Aldol adduct 196 (210 mg, 0.519 mmol, 1 equiv) was dissolved in dichloromethane (5.2 mL), and diisopropylethylamine (0.165 mL, 1.56 mmol, 3 equiv) was added. The reaction vessel was cooled to –78 °C in a dry ice-acetone cooling bath and a solution of phosgene in toluene (15% w/w, 0.665 mL, 0.571 mmol, 1.1 equiv) was added dropwise. Reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of starting material by TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 1% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution, plate developed twice). After 30 minutes, 1 M aqueous hydrochloric acid solution (10 mL) was added, and the reaction vessel was allowed to warm to 23 °C with vigorous stirring. The layers were separated, and the aqueous layer was extracted with dichloromethane (2 × 10 mL). The combined organic layers were washed sequentially with 1 M aqueous hydrochloric acid solution (10 mL) and saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution (10 mL). The washed organic phase was dried over a pad of sodium sulfate and the dried organic phase was filtered. The filtrate was concentrated to provide the crude carbamate as a white solid (240 mg). The crude product from this reaction was carried without further purification.
The carbamate (223 mg, 0.519 mmol, 1 equiv) was suspended in 1:1 dioxane:water (10 mL), placed in an oil heating bath, and brought to a vigorous reflux. Reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of starting material by TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 1% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution). After 24 h, the reaction vessel was allowed to cool to 23 °C and the reaction mixture was concentrated to ~2 mL in vacuo. The resulting suspension was dissolved in water (8 mL) and ether (10 mL), and was stirred vigorously while the pH was adjusted to ~13-14 with 2 M aqueous sodium hydroxide solution. The mixture was transferred to a separatory funnel (quantitated with 2 mL water and 2 mL ether), and the layers were separated. The aqueous layer was washed with diethyl ether (1 × 10 mL), and the combined ether layers were dried through a pad of sodium sulfate and concentrated to recover pseudoephedrine (115 mg, 97%, >95% purity), which matched previously reported data.\textsuperscript{110b} The aqueous layers were acidified to pH 2–3 with 1 M aqueous hydrochloric acid, and the suspension was extracted with dichloromethane (3 × 15 mL) and ethyl acetate (3 × 10 mL). The ethyl acetate layers were washed with 1 M aqueous hydrochloric acid (2 × 5 mL), and the two organic phases were concentrated separately. Each contained pure product 213 and were combined to yield acid 213 as a white solid (98 mg, 85%). TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 1% acetic acid): $R_f = 0.10$ (UV, PMA). $^1$H NMR (500 MHz, CD$_3$OD), $\delta$: 7.51 (d, 2H, $J = 7.3$ Hz), 7.43–7.40 (m, 2H), 7.35–7.32 (m, 1H), 4.44 (s, 1H), 1.69 (s, 3H). $^{13}$C NMR (125 MHz, CD$_3$OD), $\delta$: 172.2, 160.5, 145.6, 129.8, 129.2, 125.0, 85.6, 66.5, 25.3. FTIR (neat), cm$^{-1}$: 3308 (br), 2926 (m), 1732 (s), 1383 (s), 1217 (s), 980 (m), 764 (s) 698 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C$_{11}$H$_{11}$NO$_4$ + Na)$^+$: 244.0580; Found: 244.0585.
Protection and Neutral Hydrolysis of Aldol Adduct 199.

Aldol adduct 199 (28.3 g, 45.3 mmol, 1 equiv) was dissolved in dichloromethane (850 mL), and diisopropylethylamine (23.7 mL, 136 mmol, 3.0 equiv) was added. The reaction vessel was cooled to −78 °C in a dry ice-acetone cooling bath and a solution of phosgene in toluene (15% w/w, 37.2 mL, 52.1 mmol, 1.15 equiv) was added dropwise. Reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of starting material by TLC (5% methanol–dichloromethane + 1% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution). After 30 minutes, half saturated aqueous ammonium chloride solution (800 mL) was added, and the reaction vessel was allowed to warm to 23 °C with vigorous stirring. The layers were separated, and the aqueous layer was extracted with dichloromethane (2 × 250 mL). The combined organic layers were washed sequentially with 1 M aqueous hydrochloric acid solution (2 × 500 mL) and saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution (500 mL). The washed organic phase was dried over a pad of sodium sulfate and the dried organic phase was filtered. The filtrate was concentrated to provide the carbamate 214 as a white solid (29.5 g, 100%). Mp = 128–130 °C. TLC (5% methanol–dichloromethane): \( R_f = 0.28 \) (UV, PMA). \(^1\text{H NMR}\) (500 MHz, CDCl\(_3\)), \( \delta: 7.71–7.66 \) (m, 4H), 7.43–7.32 (m, 8H), 7.23–7.14 (m, 8H), 6.13 (d, 1H, \( J = 10.1 \text{ Hz} \)), 6.02 (br s, 1H), 5.25 (d, 1H, \( J = 10.1 \text{ Hz} \)), 4.74 (s,
1H), 4.16 (br s, 1 H), 3.81 (dd, 1H, J = 6.4 Hz, 4.1 Hz), 2.83 (s, 3H), 1.65–1.58 (m, 1H), 1.56–1.51 (m, 1H), 1.15 (s, 3 H), 1.03 (s, 9H). 0.60 (t, 3H, J = 7.3 Hz). $^{13}$C NMR (125 MHz, CDCl$_3$), δ: 171.1, 159.4, 141.0, 136.1, 135.8, 135.7, 133.8, 132.4, 129.9, 129.7, 129.1, 128.3, 127.8, 127.7, 127.5, 87.2, 78.3, 71.9, 63.0, 57.7, 30.7, 27.0, 25.7, 19.6, 16.9, 11.3. FTIR (neat), cm$^{-1}$: 3341 (br), 3070 (m), 2940 (s), 2859 (m), 1759 (s), 1633 (s), 1103 (s) 700 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C$_{39}$H$_{46}$N$_2$O$_5$Si + H)$^+$: 651.3249; Found: 651.3244.

Carbamate 214 (250 mg, 0.384 mmol, 1 equiv) was suspended in 1:1 dioxane:water (25 mL) in a 50-mL round-bottom flask. The vessel was immersed in an oil bath and the suspension was brought to reflux. After 44 h, the reaction vessel was allowed to cool to 23 ºC and the resulting suspension was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was partitioned between 1 M aqueous hydrochloric acid solution (20 mL) and ether (20 mL), and the layers were mixed vigorously and separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with ether (2 × 20 mL), and the combined organic layers were washed with 1 M aqueous hydrochloric acid solution (20 mL), saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution (20 mL), and the washed organic solution was dried with sodium sulfate. The dried solution was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated to provide acid 215 as a white solid (160 mg, 94%). The product was found to contain ≤8% of an impurity that was identified as TBDPS-OH. TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 1% acetic acid): $R_f$ = 0.50 (UV, PMA). $^1$H NMR (500 MHz, CD$_3$OD), δ: 7.77–7.67 (m, 4H), 7.47–7.33 (m, 6H), 6.98 (br s, 1H), 4.78 (s, 1H), 3.76 (t, 1H, J = 5.3 Hz), 1.69–1.57 (m, 1H), 1.50–1.38 (m, 4H), 1.05 (s, 9H), 0.53 (t, 3H, J = 7.6 Hz). $^{13}$C NMR (125 MHz, CD$_3$OD), δ: 173.0, 160.0, 136.1, 135.8, 134.0, 132.3, 129.9, 129.7, 127.7, 127.5, 88.3, 78.9, 58.6, 26.9, 25.5, 19.5, 19.0, 11.2. FTIR (neat), cm$^{-1}$: 3267 (br), 2932 (m), 2889 (m), 1744 (s), 1688 (s), 1219 (m), 1111 (s) 907 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C$_{24}$H$_{31}$NO$_5$ + H)$^+$: 442.2044; Found: 442.2058.
The aqueous layers were combined and were brought to pH 14 by the addition of 2 M sodium hydroxide solution (50 mL). The resulting suspension was extracted with dichloromethane (2 × 20 mL). The organic phases were combined and the resulting solution was washed with saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution (15 mL) and dried over sodium sulfate. The dried solution was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated to provide pseudoephedrine (79 mg, 90%), which matched previously reported data.\textsuperscript{110b}
Reduction of Aldol Adduct 187 to Provide Amino Diol 216 and Pseudoephedrine (R,R)-177.

A 100 mL round bottom flask equipped with a stir bar was charged with aldol adduct 187 (420 mg, 0.964 mmol, 1 equiv). 200-Proof ethanol (19.3 mL) was added, followed by sodium borohydride (182 mg, 4.82 mmol, 5 equiv) in one portion. The reaction vessel was placed in an oil heating bath and warmed to 40 °C. Reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of starting material by TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution). After 15 h, the reaction mixture was allowed to cool to 23 °C and saturated aqueous ammonium chloride solution was added carefully until gas evolution ceased (~1.5 mL). The reaction mixture was diluted with methanol (5 mL) and then concentrated in vacuo and loaded directly onto a column. The reaction mixture was purified by column chromatography (5→15% methanol–dichloromethane + 1% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution) to provide both (R,R)-pseudoephedrine (219 mg, 100%, >95% purity) which matched previously reported data,\textsuperscript{110b} and amino diol 216 (163 mg, 80%). \textsuperscript{1}H NMR (500 MHz, CD\textsubscript{3}OD), δ: 8.22 (d, 2H, \textit{J} = 8.8 Hz), 7.63 (d, 2H, \textit{J} = 8.8 Hz), 4.79 (d, 1H, \textit{J} = 5.9 Hz), 3.53 (dd, 1H, \textit{J} = 5.9 Hz), 3.39 (dd, 1H, \textit{J} = 11.2 Hz, 6.4 Hz), 3.39 (dd, 1H, \textit{J} = 11.2 Hz, 5.4 Hz). \textsuperscript{13}C NMR (125 MHz, CD\textsubscript{3}OD), δ: 152.3, 148.7, 128.6, 124.3, 74.0, 74.0, 59.8. FTIR (neat), cm\textsuperscript{-1}: 3376 (br), 2963 (m), 2914 (m), 1514 (s), 1344 (s), 835 (s), 700 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C\textsubscript{9}H\textsubscript{12}N\textsubscript{2}O\textsubscript{4} + H\textsuperscript{+}): 213.0870; Found: 213.0875.
Reduction of Aldol Adduct 188 to Provide Amino Diol 219 and Pseudoephedrine (R,R)-177.

A 100 mL round bottom flask equipped with a stir bar was charged with aldol adduct 188 (454 mg, 0.969 mmol, 1 equiv). 200-Proof ethanol (19.4 mL) was added, followed by sodium borohydride (183 mg, 4.84 mmol, 5 equiv) in one portion. The reaction vessel was placed in an oil heating bath and warmed to 40 °C. Reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of starting material by TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution). After 8 h, the reaction mixture was allowed to cool to 23 °C and saturated aqueous ammonium chloride solution was added carefully until gas evolution ceased (~1.5 mL). The reaction mixture was diluted with methanol (5 mL) and then concentrated in vacuo and loaded directly onto a column. The reaction mixture was purified by column chromatography (10→30% methanol–dichloromethane + 1% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution) to provide both (R,R)-pseudoephedrine (213 mg, 97%, >95% purity) which matched previously reported data, and amino diol 219 (172 mg, 72%).

1H NMR (500 MHz, CD3OD), δ: 7.94 (d, 2H, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.66 (d, 2H, J = 8.3 Hz), 4.78 (d, 1H, J = 5.9 Hz), 3.53 (dd, 1H, J = 10.7 Hz, 4.9 Hz), 3.39 (dd, 1H, J = 11.2 Hz, 6.4 Hz), 3.12 (s, 3H), 3.39 (dd, 1H, J = 11.2 Hz, 5.9 Hz). 13C NMR (125 MHz, CD3OD), δ: 151.0, 141.0, 128.6, 128.4, 74.0, 63.8, 59.8, 44.4. FTIR (neat), cm⁻¹: 3349 (br), 2926 (m), 1707 (m), 1302 (s), 1148 (s), 1051 (s), 768 (s), 542 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C10H15NO4S + Na)+: 268.0614; Found: 268.0624.

A 25 mL round bottom flask equipped with a stir bar was charged with amino diol 216 (143 mg, 0.674 mmol, 1 equiv). Methanol (2.7 mL) was added, followed by methyl dichloroacetate (0.21 mL, 2.02 mmol, 3 equiv). The reaction vessel was placed in an oil heating bath and warmed to 40 ºC, at which time complete dissolution of the starting material was achieved. Reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of starting material by TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution). After 9 h, the reaction mixture was allowed to cool to 23 ºC and the reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo, providing the title compound as a light yellow solid (211 mg, 97%) which corresponded with previously reported data.\textsuperscript{132}


A 25 mL round bottom flask equipped with a stir bar was charged with amino diol 219 (153 mg, 0.624 mmol, 1 equiv). Methanol (2.5 mL) was added, followed by methyl dichloroacetate (0.190 mL, 1.87 mmol, 3 equiv). The reaction vessel was placed in an oil heating bath and warmed to 40 °C, at which time complete dissolution of the starting material was achieved. Reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of starting material by TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution). After 16 h, the reaction mixture was allowed to cool to 23 °C and the reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo. The residue was purified by column chromatography (10% methanol–dichloromethane), providing thiamphenicol as a white solid (204 mg, 92%) which matched previously reported data.132
Functionalization of carboxylate 203 to provide the ester hydrochloride 217.

A 25-mL round bottom flask equipped with a stir bar and a reflux condenser was charged with carboxylate 203 (100 mg, 0.546 mmol, 1 equiv). Methanol (2.6 mL) was added and the reaction vessel was placed in an ice water cooling bath. Thionyl chloride (0.120 mL, 1.64 mmol, 3 equiv) was added dropwise and then the cooling bath was removed. The reaction vessel was placed in an oil heating bath and brought to reflux. Reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of starting material by $^1$H NMR (in CD$_3$OD) analysis of aliquots removed from the reaction mixture. After 4 h, reaction mixture was allowed to cool to 23 °C and concentrated in vacuo. The crude residue was taken up in chloroform (2 mL) and filtered through a pad of Celite. The organic phase was concentrated to afford the ester hydrochloride 217 as a yellow oil in quantitative yield. $^1$H NMR (500 MHz, CD$_3$OD), $\delta$: 4.14 (d, 1H, $J = 2.8$ Hz), 3.86 (s, 3H), 3.78 (d, 1H, $J = 2.8$ Hz), 0.99 (s, 9H). $^{13}$C NMR (125 MHz, CD$_3$OD), $\delta$: 171.0, 76.5, 54.7, 53.9, 36.3, 26.1. FTIR (neat), cm$^{-1}$: 3227 (br), 2959 (s), 2874 (m), 1746 (s), 1441 (s), 1229 (s), 1018 (s): HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C$_8$H$_{17}$NO$_3$ + Na)$^+$: 198.1101; Found: 198.1101.
Boc protection of amino carboxylate 208.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{NaO} & \quad \text{Boc}_2\text{O (1.5 equiv)} \\
\text{H} & \quad \text{NaOH (2.0 equiv)} \\
\text{1:1 H}_2\text{O:dioxane} & \quad \text{87}\% \\
\text{NH}_2 & \quad \text{NHBoc}
\end{align*}
\]

A 25-mL round bottom flask equipped with a stir bar was charged with carboxylate 25 (110 mg, 0.709 mmol, 1 equiv). A 1:1 mixture of water:1,4-dioxane (6.0 mL) was added and the reaction vessel was placed in an ice water cooling bath. Aqueous sodium hydroxide solution (1.0 M, 1.42 mL, 1.42 mmol, 2 equiv) was added, followed by di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (2.47 mL, 1.06 mmol, 1.5 equiv). The cooling bath was removed after 5 minutes and the vessel continued to stir at 23 °C. Reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of starting material by \(^1\text{H NMR (in CD}_3\text{OD)}\) analysis of aliquots removed from the reaction mixture. After 20 h, water (5 mL) was added and the mixture was washed with one portion of ether (20 mL). The aqueous phase was then placed in an ice-water cooling bath and 1 M aqueous hydrochloric acid solution was added dropwise to pH 2. The acidified aqueous phase was then extracted with ethyl acetate (3 × 25 mL). The organic extracts were combined and were dried over sodium sulfate. The dried organic phase was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated to provide the \(N\)-Boc-protected acid 29 (144 mg, 87%) as a light yellow oil which matched previously reported data.\(^{133}\)

X-ray Crystallographic Laboratory Structure Report

Shao-Liang Zheng, Harvard University

\[(R,R)-179\]
X-Ray Crystallography

A crystal mounted on a diffractometer was collected data at 100 K. The intensities of the reflections were collected by means of a Bruker APEX II DUO CCD diffractometer (CuKα radiation, λ=1.54178 Å), and equipped with an Oxford Cryosystems nitrogen flow apparatus. The collection method involved 1.0° scans in ω at 30°, 55°, 80° and 115° in 2θ. Data integration down to 0.84 Å resolution was carried out using SAINT V8.30 A with reflection spot size optimization. Absorption corrections were made with the program SADABS. The structure was solved by the direct methods procedure and refined by least-squares methods again F² using SHELXS-2013 and SHELXL-2013 with OLEX 2 interface. Non-hydrogen atoms were refined anisotropically, and hydrogen atoms were allowed to ride on the respective atoms. Crystal data as well as details of data collection and refinement are summarized in Table E3. The Ortep plots produced with SHELXL-2013 program, and the other drawings were produced with Accelrys DS Visualizer 2.0.

---


**Table E3: Experimental details.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Crystal data</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chemical formula</strong></td>
<td>C\textsubscript{17}H\textsubscript{20}N\textsubscript{2}O\textsubscript{2}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M\textsubscript{r}</strong></td>
<td>284.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Crystal system, space group</strong></td>
<td>Orthorhombic, \textit{P2}<em>{12}1</em>{2}1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Temperature (K)</strong></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>a, b, c (Å)</strong></td>
<td>6.7671 (2), 14.6871 (3), 14.9526 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>V (Å\textsuperscript{3})</strong></td>
<td>1486.12 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Z</strong></td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Radiation type</strong></td>
<td>Cu K\textalpha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>(\mu) (mm\textsuperscript{-1})</strong></td>
<td>0.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Crystal size (mm)</strong></td>
<td>0.28 × 0.24 × 0.16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Data collection**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Diffractometer</strong></th>
<th>Bruker D8 goniometer with CCD area detector diffractometer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Absorption correction</strong></td>
<td>Multi-scan \textit{SADABS}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>(T_{\text{min}}, T_{\text{max}})</strong></td>
<td>0.693, 0.753</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>No. of measured, independent and observed [I &gt; 2(\sigma(I))] reflections</strong></td>
<td>36350, 2592, 2570</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>(R_{\text{int}})</strong></td>
<td>0.028</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>(sin (\theta/\lambda))_{\text{max}} (Å\textsuperscript{-1})</strong></td>
<td>0.596</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Refinement**

| **R[\(F^2 > 2\sigma(F^2)\)], wR(\(F^2\)), S** | 0.024, 0.062, 1.08                                          |
| **No. of reflections** | 2592                                                        |
| **No. of parameters** | 204                                                         |
| **No. of restraints** | 0                                                           |
| **H-atom treatment** | H atoms treated by a mixture of independent and constrained refinement |
| **\(\Delta \rho_{\text{max}}, \Delta \rho_{\text{min}}\) (e Å\textsuperscript{-3})** | 0.19, -0.14                                                |
| **Absolute structure** | Flack x determined\textsuperscript{136} using 1046 quotients \([(I^+)-(I^-)]/[(I^+)+(I^-)]. |
| **Absolute structure parameter** | 0.02 (4)                                                   |


\textsuperscript{136} Parsons and Flack, \textit{Acta Cryst} 2004, \textit{A60}, s61.
Figure E5: Perspective views showing 50% probability displacement.

Figure E6: Three-dimensional supramolecular architecture viewed along the $a$-axis direction.
X-ray Crystallographic Laboratory Structure Report

Shao-Liang Zheng, Harvard University
X-Ray Crystallography

A crystal mounted on a diffractometer was collected data at 100 K. The intensities of the reflections were collected by means of a Bruker APEX II DUO CCD diffractometer (CuKα radiation, λ=1.54178 Å), and equipped with an Oxford Cryosystems nitrogen flow apparatus. The collection method involved 1.0° scans in ω at 30°, 55°, 80° and 115° in 2θ. Data integration down to 0.84 Å resolution was carried out using SAINT V8.30 A134 with reflection spot size optimization. Absorption corrections were made with the program SADABS.134 The structure was solved by the direct methods procedure and refined by least-squares methods again \( F^2 \) using SHELXS-2013 and SHELXL-201366 with OLEX 2 interface.135 Non-hydrogen atoms were refined anisotropically, and hydrogen atoms were allowed to ride on the respective atoms. Crystal data as well as details of data collection and refinement are summarized in Table E4. The Ortep plots produced with SHELXL-2013 program, and the other drawings were produced with Accelrys DS Visualizer 2.0.67
Table E4: Experimental details.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Crystal data</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chemical formula</td>
<td>C$<em>{21}$H$</em>{28}$N$<em>{2}$O$</em>{3}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$M_r$</td>
<td>356.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crystal system, space group</td>
<td>Monoclinic, $P2_1$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temperature (K)</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$a$, $b$, $c$ (Å)</td>
<td>12.4892 (4), 6.1263 (2), 12.4919 (4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\beta$ (°)</td>
<td>93.300 (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$V$ (Å$^3$)</td>
<td>954.20 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$Z$</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiation type</td>
<td>Cu Kα</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\mu$ (mm$^{-1}$)</td>
<td>0.66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crystal size (mm)</td>
<td>0.18 × 0.03 × 0.02</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data collection</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Diffractometer</td>
<td>Bruker D8 goniometer with CCD area detector diffractometer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Absorption correction</td>
<td>Multi-scan SADABS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$T_{\text{min}}, T_{\text{max}}$</td>
<td>0.490, 0.753</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of measured, independent and observed $[I &gt; 2\sigma(I)]$ reflections</td>
<td>14252, 3128, 3115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$R_{\text{int}}$</td>
<td>0.063</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$(\sin \theta/\lambda)_{\text{max}}$ (Å$^{-1}$)</td>
<td>0.596</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Refinement</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$R[F^2 &gt; 2\sigma(F^2)], wR(F^2), S$</td>
<td>0.044, 0.110, 1.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of reflections</td>
<td>3128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of parameters</td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of restraints</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H-atom treatment</td>
<td>H atoms treated by a mixture of independent and constrained refinement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\Delta \rho_{\text{max}}, \Delta \rho_{\text{min}}$ (e Å$^{-3}$)</td>
<td>0.29, -0.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Absolute structure</td>
<td>Flack x determined$^{136}$ using 1312 quotients $[(I+)-(I-)]/[(I+)+(I-)]$.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Absolute structure parameter</td>
<td>-0.3 (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure E7:** Perspective views showing 50% probability displacement.

**Figure E8:** Three-dimensional supramolecular architecture viewed along the $b$-axis direction.
X-ray Crystallographic Laboratory Structure Report

Shao-Liang Zheng, Harvard University
X-Ray Crystallography

A crystal mounted on a diffractometer was collected data at 100 K. The intensities of the reflections were collected by means of a Bruker APEX II DUO CCD diffractometer (CuKα radiation, λ=1.54178 Å), and equipped with an Oxford Cryosystems nitrogen flow apparatus. The collection method involved 1.0° scans in ω at 30°, 55°, 80° and 115° in 2θ. Data integration down to 0.84 Å resolution was carried out using SAINT V8.30 A134 with reflection spot size optimization. Absorption corrections were made with the program SADABS.134 The structure was solved by the direct methods procedure and refined by least-squares methods again $F^2$ using SHELXS-2013 and SHELXL-201366 with OLEX 2 interface.135 Non-hydrogen atoms were refined anisotropically, and hydrogen atoms were allowed to ride on the respective atoms. Crystal data as well as details of data collection and refinement are summarized in Table E5. The Ortep plots produced with SHELXL-2013 program, and the other drawings were produced with Accelrys DS Visualizer 2.0.67
Table E5: Experimental details.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Crystal data</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chemical formula</td>
<td>C\textsubscript{22}H\textsubscript{32}N\textsubscript{2}O\textsubscript{4}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(M_r)</td>
<td>388.49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crystal system, space group</td>
<td>Monoclinic, (P2_1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temperature (K)</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a, b, c) (Å)</td>
<td>10.0576 (2), 7.5081 (2), 14.2721 (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\beta) (°)</td>
<td>100.2676 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(V) (Å\textsuperscript{3})</td>
<td>1060.48 (4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Z)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiation type</td>
<td>Cu K(\alpha)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\mu) (mm\textsuperscript{-1})</td>
<td>0.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crystal size (mm)</td>
<td>0.20 × 0.14 × 0.10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data collection</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Diffractometer</td>
<td>Bruker D8 goniometer with CCD area detector diffractometer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Absorption correction</td>
<td>Multi-scan SADABS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(T_{\text{min}}, T_{\text{max}})</td>
<td>0.549, 0.753</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of measured, independent and observed ([I &gt; 2\sigma(I)]) reflections</td>
<td>26005, 3570, 3547</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(R_{\text{int}})</td>
<td>0.050</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>((\sin \theta/\lambda)_{\text{max}}) (Å\textsuperscript{-1})</td>
<td>0.594</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Refinement</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(R[F^2 &gt; 2\sigma(F^2)], wR(F^2), S)</td>
<td>0.035, 0.090, 1.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of reflections</td>
<td>3570</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of parameters</td>
<td>281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of restraints</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H-atom treatment</td>
<td>H atoms treated by a mixture of independent and constrained refinement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\Delta \rho_{\text{max}}, \Delta \rho_{\text{min}}) (e Å\textsuperscript{-3})</td>
<td>0.17, -0.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Absolute structure</td>
<td>Flack x determined\textsuperscript{136} using 1570 quotients ([(I+)-(I-)][(I+)+(I-)]]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Absolute structure parameter</td>
<td>-0.10 (15)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure E9:** Perspective views showing 50% probability displacement.

**Figure E10:** Three-dimensional supramolecular architecture viewed along the $b$-axis direction.
Chapter 4

Synthesis of Monobactams through the Aldolization of Pseudoephedrine Glycinamide
**Monocyclic β-Lactams (Monobactams)**

Monocyclic β-lactams, also known as monobactams, are a class of antibacterial agents that primarily target Gram-negative pathogens. Like other β-lactam antibiotics, monobactams bind to penicillin-binding protein 3, inhibiting cell wall synthesis and causing cell death. Weakly bioactive natural monocyclic β-lactams 220 and 221 were isolated simultaneously in 1981 at Takeda Pharmaceuticals137 in Japan and Squibb138 in the United States (Figure 4.1). Inspired by the potential these molecules possessed, multiple research platforms were launched toward the study of additional monobactams through both semi-synthetic139 and fully synthetic methods.140

![Monocyclic β-Lactams](image)

**Figure 4.1:** Naturally occurring monocyclic β-lactam antibiotics.

---


Later in 1981, Squibb scientists reported the synthesis of compound SQ 26,776, later renamed aztreonam (103), a potent Gram-negative antibiotic agent (Figure 4.2). Aztreonam was discovered by screening monocyclic β-lactam cores with varied substitution patterns at C4, as well as by investigation of common cephalosporin acyl side chains on the C3-amine and the identity of the activating group on the lactam nitrogen. Critical for the resulting biological activity of monobactams, these three parameters can be tuned to promote Gram-positive, Gram-negative or, in some cases, broad spectrum antibacterial activity. Aztreonam itself was optimized for Gram-negative antibiotic activity, especially against virulent Pseudomonas aeruginosa, a naturally antibiotic-resistant species responsible for nosocomial infections. The most lucrative monobactam to date, aztreonam was approved by the FDA in 1986 for use against Gram-negative bacteria, but nowadays aztreonam resistance has become commonplace, even in P. aeruginosa isolates.

Shortly after the discovery of aztreonam, Takeda researchers in collaboration with Hoffman-La Roche scientists reported the synthesis of their own monocyclic β-lactam antibiotic, carumonam (222), also known as AMA-1080 (Figure 4.2). Structurally, aztreonam and

---


carumonam are quite similar, except for a slight modification of the acyl side chain and the substituent at C4 (and its stereochemical configuration). While it was approved in Japan in the mid- to late-1980s for use against Gram-negative bacterial infections and marketed under the name “amasulin,” carumonam is not widely prescribed in the United States.

After the successful development of aztreonam, the Squibb chemists continued to evaluate additional monobactam candidates for improved potencies and pharmacokinetic profiles, thereby arriving at tigemonam (223) in 1988 (Figure 4.2).\textsuperscript{145} Tigemonam possesses an acyl side chain identical to carumonam, an O-sulfonic acid β-lactam activating group, and two methyl groups at the C4-position. While tigemonam (223) was a promising candidate, its development as a new antibiotic stalled in the early 1990s and was eventually discontinued.

\begin{figure}
\centering
\includegraphics[width=\textwidth]{structures.png}
\caption{The structures of aztreonam (103), carumonam (222) and tigemonam (223).}
\end{figure}

Twenty years later, there is renewed interest in monocyclic β-lactam antibiotics, sparked by Basilea’s development of BAL30072 (224) in 2010\textsuperscript{146} and continued by Pfizer’s report of MB-1 (225) in 2012 (Figure 4.3).\textsuperscript{147} Both of these molecules feature a 1,5-dihydroxy-4-pyridone substituent, a siderophore\textsuperscript{148} presumed to improve cell penetration by taking advantage of iron transport mechanisms.\textsuperscript{149} BAL30072 is currently in Phase I clinical trials to treat multidrug-resistant Gram-negative pathogens, alone and in combination with meropenem, a carbapenem. Pfizer’s MB-1 (225) is currently undergoing in vivo pre-clinical trials, but there is a recent report of unexpected variability between in vitro and in vivo efficacies.\textsuperscript{150}

\begin{footnotesize}


\textsuperscript{148} Siderophores, from the Greek for “iron carriers,” are small molecules with high affinities for iron secreted by bacteria and fungi with the purpose of scavenging iron from the environment. For a review on the chemistry and biology of siderophores, see Hider, R. C.; Kong, X. Nat. Prod. Rep. 2010, 27, 637–657.


\end{footnotesize}
Synthetic Methods

Both semi-synthetic and fully synthetic methodologies have been employed in the production of monobactams and related compounds. In the initial stages of development, it was demonstrated that semi-synthetic means required greater effort while producing only a narrow scope of accessible scaffolds. The limitations of semi-synthesis, coupled with the ingenuity of academic and industrial chemists, inspired multiple fully synthetic avenues to monocyclic β-lactam structures.


The strategy of highest utility was developed by Dr. Marvin Miller at the University of Notre Dame, who pioneered access to β-lactams from amino acid starting materials. Using threonine as a sample substrate, Miller demonstrated that β-lactams could be formed in a stereospecific manner (Scheme 4.1). \( N \)-Boc-L-threonine (226) was converted into hydroxamate 227 by treatment with \( O \)-benzyl hydroxylamine and DCC. Hydroxamate 227 cyclized to give β-lactam 228 under Mitsunobu (\( \text{PPh}_3, \text{DEAD} \)) or modified Appel (\( \text{PPh}_3, \text{CCl}_4, \text{NEt}_3 \)) conditions (Scheme 4.1, equation 1). Subjection of \( N \)-Boc-DL-\textit{allo}-threonine (229) to the same sequence of reactions afforded β-lactam 231, a diastereomer of 228 (Scheme 4.1, equation 2). The hydroxamate functionality was essential for successful cyclization; the increased acidity of the N–H bond facilitated conversion into a better tethered nucleophile for an intramolecular Mitsunobu-type reaction.

![Scheme 4.1](image)

**Scheme 4.1:** Miller methodology for the synthesis of β-lactams.

Miller noted, “The retention of configuration at C\(_3\) and the clean inversion at C\(_4\) during this cyclization implied that essentially any chiral β-lactam could be made by simply choosing the
appropriate chiral starting β-hydroxy acid.”154 With the reliability and predictability of this method, in many cases, access to the chiral β-hydroxy acid starting material was the limiting factor for a desired transformation.

**Synthesis of the Aztreonam Core and Other Monobactam Cores**

Utilizing Miller’s methodology as a guide, the Squibb chemists optimized their synthetic approach to the β-lactam core of aztreonam (Scheme 4.2).155 Conversion of threonine (232) into amide 233 was effected by sequential treatment with thionyl chloride, ammonia (to form the amide), and di-tert-butyl dicarbonate with potassium hydroxide. The secondary alcohol of 233 was transformed into mesylate 234 in ≥80% yield, and the amide of 234 was transformed into acyl sulfamate 235, a cyclization precursor. Functionalization of nitrogen at this stage circumvents later functional group manipulations. Cyclization of 235 occurred upon exposure to a mild base, potassium bicarbonate, affording β-lactam 236 in ≥90% yield. Removal of the tert-butyl carbamate gave aztreonam β-lactam core 237 in ≥65% yield. The core 237 was converted into aztreonam (103) in two additional steps (not shown).156


Scheme 4.2: Synthesis of 237, the β-lactam core of aztreonam.

Other clinically relevant monocyclic β-lactams could be accessed using Miller’s cyclization chemistry, with Squibb modifications if necessary, albeit using different cyclization precursors (Scheme 4.3). Carumonam core 240 was the product of a base-promoted cyclization of acyl sulfamate 239 (Scheme 4.3, A).\textsuperscript{144b} Tigemonam and BAL30072 share a common core synthesized from N-Boc-3-hydroxy-L-valine (218). Proving the timeless nature of high-quality chemistry, the Basilea chemists constructed the core of BAL30072 in the mid-2000s based on work published in the 1980s (Scheme 4.3, B).\textsuperscript{157}

While carumonam and Pfizer compound MB-1 (225) share a common carbon core, the Pfizer researchers utilized a different strategy to access the core of β-lactam 225 in 2012. Compound 246 was accessed employing methodology originally disclosed by Takeda chemists toward the synthesis of carumonam, that involved a [2+2] cycloaddition between imine 243 and a ketene derived from phthalimidoacetyl chloride (Scheme 4.3, C).\textsuperscript{152b} While this cycloaddition

strategy allowed the production of hundreds of grams of cis-cycloadduct 244, the route required a resolution of stereoisomers, resulting in a significant loss of material, and required additional protecting group interchanges.

A. Carumonam core

B. Tigemonam/BAL30072 core

C. Pfizer compound MB-1 (1st generation carumonam core)

Scheme 4.3: Syntheses of the cores of the clinically relevant monobactams.

These methodologies are highly useful and allow access to a variety of β-lactams; however their scope is still limited by the availability of chiral β-hydroxy-α-amino acid starting materials. For example, the C4-position of the monobactams is traditionally monosubstituted (in either an
(R)- or (S)- configuration) and the prepared disubstituted compounds (e.g. tigemonam and BAL30072) have identical, methyl substituents. Access to differentially substituted monocyclic β-lactams is thus limited. These novel compounds hold potential to further the investigation of SAR of the monobactams, strengthen target binding to PBP3, and overcome common bacterial resistance mechanisms (such as β-lactamases).

**Synthesis of C4-Disubstituted Monocyclic β-Lactams**

In the previous chapter, I detailed a strategy that provides an approach to β,β'-disubstituted-β-hydroxy-α-amino acids. Application of the N-Boc-protected derivatives toward the synthesis of monobactams, using predictable and precedented methods, would result in the stereocontrolled production of differentially C4 substituted monobactam antibiotics.

To validate this approach, I targeted aztreonam–tigemonam hybrid 250,158 starting from N-Boc amino acid 218 (which was obtained by aldolization of (R,R)-pseudoephenamine glycinamide with acetone and subsequent auxiliary cleavage and amine protection). N-Boc-3-hydroxy-L-valine (218) was converted into hydroxamate 241 in 72% yield upon treatment with O-benzyl hydroxylamine and EDC (Scheme 4.4). Cyclization of hydroxamate 241 proceeded after addition of the SO₃•pyridine complex and K₂CO₃, and heating the reaction mixture to reflux, affording β-lactam 242 in 77% yield. The benzyl ether was reductively cleaved by subjection to hydrogenolysis conditions, giving N-hydroxy β-lactam 247 in 80% yield. The O-sulfonic acid was introduced by additional treatment with the SO₃•pyridine complex, and the tert-butyl carbamate was removed with strong acid, yielding β-lactam 248. The aztreonam acyl side chain was introduced by coupling 249 with core 248 in the presence of triethylamine. Saponification of the tert-butyl ester of the side chain was effected upon brief treatment with

---

TFA in the presence of anisole (as a tert-butyl cation scavenger) at 0 °C, producing aztreonam–tigemonam hybrid 250. This target molecule served as the basis for comparison, along with aztreonam, in the analysis of biological activity.

![Scheme 4.4: Synthesis of aztreonam–tigemonam hybrid 250.](image)

Utilizing the same synthetic strategy, I synthesized C4-bisfluoromethyl monobactam analog 256 (Scheme 4.5). N-Boc amino acid 251 was transformed into hydroxamate 252 in 88% yield upon treatment with O-benzyl hydroxylamine and EDC. Cyclization of hydroxamate 252 under identical conditions for 241 was unsuccessful. Presumably, the tertiary alcohol was not transformed into the intermediate sulfonate (not shown) due to the strongly electron withdrawing nature of the nearby fluoromethyl substituents. However, β-lactam 253 was accessed in 45% yield by reaction with PPh₃, CCl₄ and NEt₃. The benzyl ether was reductively cleaved upon treatment with H₂ and Pd/C, producing N-hydroxy β-lactam 254 in quantitative yield. Comparable to the dimethyl substrate 247, the O-sulfonic acid was added by treatment with SO₃·pyridine complex and the tert-butyl carbamate was cleaved upon exposure to strong acid, yielding β-lactam 255. Introduction of the acyl side chain and saponification of the tert-
butyl ester were effected analogously to compound 248, but delivered 256 in rather disappointing 2% yield. This low yield presumably arose from the facile cleavage of the O-sulfonic acid functionality or the inherent instability of 256 imparted by the two fluoromethyl substituents.\(^\text{159}\)

In light of this, I decided to pursue N-sulfonic acid monobactams instead of additional O-sulfonic acid derivatives.

![Scheme 4.5: Synthesis of C4-bisfluoromethyl monobactam 256.](image)

Synthesis of C4-disubstituted monobactams 250 and 256 validated this synthetic strategy, but in both cases, the two substituents were identical. To demonstrate the enabling capabilities of the newly developed aldol methodology in the synthesis of monobactam antibiotics, I targeted β-lactam core 262, with asymmetric substitution at the C4-position consisting of a smaller methyl group and a larger synthetic handle in the form of a silyl-protected hydroxymethyl functionality (Scheme 4.6). N-Boc amino acid 257 was isolated from a one-pot reaction involving basic

---

\(^{159}\) C4-Fluoromethyl aztreonam and related compounds have been synthesized and their antibacterial efficacies have been evaluated. These compounds were shown to demonstrate similar bioactivity to aztreonam and possess greater stability toward β-lactamases. See: Matsuda, K.; Nakagawa, S.; Nakano, F.; Inoue, M.; Mitsuhashi, S. *J. Antimicrob. Chemother.* 1987, 19, 753–760. C4-Trifluoromethyl aztreonam has also been synthesized and shown to decompose in physiological buffers. See Ref. 152g. We therefore surmised that the stability of bisfluoromethyl monobactam 256 lies between that of C4-fluoromethyl aztreonam and C4-trifluoromethyl aztreonam.
hydrolysis of aldol adduct 198 with sodium hydroxide, followed by N-Boc protection with di-tert-butyl dicarbonate and additional sodium hydroxide. Treatment of N-Boc acid 257 with O-benzyl hydroxylamine in the presence of EDC afforded hydroxamate 258 in 64% yield. Cyclization was effected by PPh₃, CCl₄, and NEt₃, producing β-lactam 259 in 67% yield. The benzyl ether was removed under reducing conditions (H₂, Pd/C), affording N-hydroxyl β-lactam 260 in 76% yield. At this point the stereochemical configuration was determined by nOe NMR experiments and was consistent with predictions based on Miller’s method (invertive cyclization). Using conditions developed by Miller in 1980, I reductively cleaved the N–O bond by treatment with a solution of titanium trichloride in buffered methanol,¹⁶⁰ obtaining β-lactam 261 in 85% yield. At this point, I decided to attach the acyl side chain on the C3-amine, thereby accessing a common intermediate amenable to late-stage diversification. Therefore, I treated β-lactam 261 with TFA in the presence of anisole at 0 °C, and obtained β-lactam core 262 in 70% yield.

Scheme 4.6: Synthesis of 262, a C4-differentially substituted β-lactam core.

Next, the side chain was attached onto β-lactam core 262 (Scheme 4.7). Standard peptide coupling conditions (amine 262, acid 263, and EDC), delivered N-acylated product 264 in 64% yield. Treatment of 264 with the SO₃•DMF complex afforded N-sulfonic acid 265 in 41% yield, which, upon global deprotection with HF, gave C4-differentially substituted monocyclic β-lactam 266 in 14% yield.

Additionally, I wanted to explore the use of the hydroxymethyl substituent at the C4-position as a handle to introduce additional functionality, such as a siderophore (Scheme 4.8). For that reason, I removed the TIPS group from N-acylated product 264 by treatment with NE₃•3HF, and obtained alcohol 267 in 55% yield, along with 33% of 264. The alcohol 267 was transformed into intermediate carbamate 268 in 80% yield by reaction with CDI. I then introduced a 1,5-dibenzzyloxy-4-pyridone moiety by treatment of 268 with amine 269, obtaining carbamate 270.
in 44% yield. The low yield presumably arose from the steric bulk near the C4-position. Attempts to effect carbamate 270 formation by a one-pot procedure were unsuccessful.

![Scheme 4.8: Synthesis of intermediate monobactam 270.](image)

With 270 in hand, I was two transformations away from a final compound 272 (Scheme 4.9). The N-sulfonic acid was introduced by subjecting 270 to SO$_3$•DMF complex, quantitatively delivering compound 271. Global deprotection of the two benzyl ethers, the tert-butyl carbamate and the tert-butyl ester was effected upon treatment of 271 with BCl$_3$ in xylenes, affording siderophore-conjugated monocyclic β-lactam 272 in 35% yield. Synthesis of this compound was particularly exciting due to its unprecedented asymmetric C4-stereocenter and successful incorporation of a siderophore that potentially could improve cell penetration.
In total, I prepared four fully synthetic C4-disubstituted monocyclic β-lactams. These included aztreonam–tigemonam hybrid 250, a benchmark standard; bisfluoromethyl monobactam 256, an otherwise inaccessible scaffold; hydroxymethyl monobactam 266, an asymmetric C4-disubstituted standard; and monobactam 272, a siderophore-conjugated compound.

**Antibacterial Activity**

The compounds 250, 256, 266, and 272 were tested for antibacterial activity. Determination of minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) values, a measure of antibiotic potency, was performed at the University of North Texas Health Sciences Center (UNT-HSC). Aztreonam was used as a standard and the results are summarized in Table 4.1. Aztreonam–tigemonam hybrid 250 displayed improved biological activity compared with aztreonam against Gram-positive (S. pneumonia and S. pyogenes) bacterial strains and similar activity against Gram-negative pathogens. The bisfluoromethyl monobactam 256 demonstrated weak potency against only H. influenzae strains, presumably due to the facile cleavage of the activating group on the β-lactam (thereby reducing the compound’s inherent potency) or the intrinsic instability imparted by the two fluoromethyl substituents. Hydroxymethyl monobactam 266 did not display any
antibacterial activity. Lastly, siderophore-conjugated monobactam 272 demonstrated no antibiotic activity against Gram-positive bacterial strains and poor bioactivity against roughly half of the Gram-negative strains tested.

Table 4.1: Minimum Inhibitory Concentrations for Monobactams 250, 256, 266 and 272.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species</th>
<th>Genotype</th>
<th>250</th>
<th>256</th>
<th>266</th>
<th>272</th>
<th>AZR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S. aureus</td>
<td>ATCC 29213</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. aureus</td>
<td>BAA-1556 (USA300)</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. aureus</td>
<td>NRS710 (USA100, Erythro &gt; 8)</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. aureus</td>
<td>TP 506 (erm A)</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. aureus</td>
<td>NRS22 (USA600, GISA)</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. pneumoniae</td>
<td>ATCC 49619</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&lt;0.0313</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. pneumoniae</td>
<td>TP 160 (mef A)</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. pneumoniae</td>
<td>TP 1517 (mef A)</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. pneumoniae</td>
<td>TP 1579 (erm B + tet(M,O))</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. pneumoniae</td>
<td>TP 1537 (erm B + mef A)</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. pneumoniae</td>
<td>ATCC 19615</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. pneumoniae</td>
<td>Macrolide-resistant</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E. faecalis</td>
<td>ATCC 29212</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E. faecalis</td>
<td>Vancomycin resistant</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E. coli</td>
<td>ATCC 25922</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>&lt;0.0313</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E. coli</td>
<td>GUEST131 (NDM-1)</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E. coli</td>
<td>TEM-1</td>
<td>ND</td>
<td>ND</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>0.0625</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E. coli</td>
<td>CTX-M-4</td>
<td>ND</td>
<td>ND</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. baumannii</td>
<td>ATCC 19606</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. baumannii</td>
<td>imipenem-resistant</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. baumannii</td>
<td>chromosomal class C</td>
<td>ND</td>
<td>ND</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. baumannii</td>
<td>IMP-4</td>
<td>ND</td>
<td>ND</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K. pneumoniae</td>
<td>ATCC 10031</td>
<td>0.125</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>&lt;0.0313</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K. pneumoniae</td>
<td>IHMA 658692; KPC-2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K. pneumoniae</td>
<td>TEM-10</td>
<td>ND</td>
<td>ND</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K. pneumoniae</td>
<td>SHV-2</td>
<td>ND</td>
<td>ND</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. aeruginosa</td>
<td>ATCC 27853</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. aeruginosa</td>
<td>HPA101-1477</td>
<td>ND</td>
<td>ND</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H. influenzae</td>
<td>Erythro &gt;4, Clarithro 8, Azithro 1</td>
<td>&lt; 0.0313</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>&lt;0.0313</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H. influenzae</td>
<td>ATCC 49247</td>
<td>0.0625</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>&gt;32</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>0.125</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MICs are reported as μg/mL. AZR = aztreonam.
Conclusions

I utilized the newly developed methodology (pseudoephedrine glycinamide aldolizations with ketone electrophiles) to access to β,β'-disubstituted-β-hydroxy-α-amino acids. I elaborated these substrates to provide novel C4-disubstituted monobactam analogs, an underrepresented class of β-lactam antibiotics. Four C4-disubstituted monocyclic β-lactam antibiotic candidates were synthesized and their antibiotic activities were assessed. While the novel siderophore-conjugated monobactam 272 was shown to display poor antibacterial activity, aztreonam–tigemonam hybrid 250 demonstrated improved bioactivity against Gram-positive pathogens, as compared to aztreonam.

The antibacterial activity of the monobactams is a function of multiple structural components. As noted by the Squibb scientists who developed aztreonam (and later tigemonam), “Substitution at the 4-position of the monocyclic ring although capable of producing dramatic changes in biological activity, is highly unpredictable.”14 The activating group on the β-lactam nitrogen, the C3-acyl side chain and the identity and configuration of substitution at C4 greatly impact potential biological activity. I have investigated three new scaffolds (and one known) and found that the O-sulfonic acid activating group can improve biological activity, at the expense of compound stability. Regarding the influence of C4-disubstitution (e.g. 266, 272), additional substrates are necessary before trends can be established. Therefore, continued production of monocyclic β-lactam scaffolds is warranted (and is enabled via our methodology) in order to further investigate SAR of monobactams, strengthen target affinity, and impart stability toward β-lactamases, potentially producing a new marketable monocyclic β-lactam antibiotic.
General Experimental Procedures

All reactions were performed in flame-dried glassware fitted with rubber septa under a positive pressure of argon, unless otherwise noted. Air- and moisture-sensitive liquids were transferred via syringe or stainless steel cannula. Solutions were concentrated by rotary evaporation below 35 °C. Analytical thin-layer chromatography (TLC) was performed using glass plates pre-coated with silica gel (0.25-mm, 60-Å pore size, 230–400 mesh, Merck KGA) impregnated with a fluorescent indicator (254 nm). TLC plates were visualized by exposure to ultraviolet light (UV), then were stained by submersion in a 10% solution of phosphomolybdic acid (PMA) in ethanol, followed by brief heating on a hot plate. Flash-column chromatography was performed as described by Still et al., \textsuperscript{60} employing silica gel (60 Å, standard grade) purchased from Dynamic Adsorbents. Tetrahydrofuran, dichloromethane, and ether were purified by the method of Pangborn et al.\textsuperscript{61}

Instrumentation

Proton nuclear magnetic resonance (\textsuperscript{1}H NMR) spectra were recorded on Varian MERCURY 400 (400 MHz), Varian INOVA 500 (500 MHz), or Varian INOVA 600 (600 MHz) NMR spectrometers at 23 °C. Proton chemical shifts are expressed in parts per million (ppm, δ scale) and are referenced to residual protium in the NMR solvent (\textit{CHCl}_3: δ 7.26, D\textsubscript{2}HCOD: δ 3.31). Data are represented as follows: chemical shift, multiplicity (s = singlet, d = doublet, t = triplet, q = quartet, dd = doublet of doublets, dt = doublet of triplets, sxt = sextet, m = multiplet, br = broad, app = apparent), integration, and coupling constant (J) in Hertz (Hz). Infrared (IR) spectra were obtained using a Shimadzu 8400S FT-IR spectrophotometer referenced to a polystyrene standard. Data are represented as follows: frequency of absorption (cm\textsuperscript{-1}), and
intensity of absorption (s = strong, m = medium, br = broad). HPLC retention times were acquired using a Beckman System Gold instrument equipped with a Chiracel OD-H column (5 mm particle size, 4.6 mm x 250 mm). High-resolution mass spectra were obtained at the Harvard University Mass Spectrometry Facility using a Bruker microTOF-QII mass spectrometer. LC–MS analysis was performed on an Agilent 1260 Infinity instrument equipped with a 6120 quadrupole LC–MS.

(For clarity, intermediates that have not been assigned numbers in the text are numbered sequentially in the Supporting Information beginning with 273.)
One pot, two step synthesis of N-Boc acid 251 from aldol adduct 194.

A 25-mL round bottom flask equipped with a stir bar was charged with aldol adduct 194 (616 mg, 1.63 mmol, 1 equiv). A 1:1 mixture of tetrahydrofuran:methanol (6.4 mL) was added, followed by aqueous sodium hydroxide solution (1.0 M, 1.63 mL, 1.63 mmol, 1 equiv). Reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of starting material by TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution). After 4 d, the reaction mixture was concentrated to dryness and the residue was dissolved in a 1:1 mixture of water:1,4-dioxane (15 mL). The reaction vessel was placed in an ice-water cooling bath. Aqueous sodium hydroxide solution (1.0 M, 4.88 mL, 4.88 mmol, 3 equiv) was added, followed by di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (1.13 mL, 4.88 mmol, 3 equiv). The cooling bath was removed after 5 minutes and the vessel continued to stir at 23 °C. Reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of starting material by LC–MS analysis of aliquots removed from the reaction mixture. After 16 h, water (30 mL) was added and the mixture was washed with three portions of ether (30 mL). The ethereal extracts were combined and back-extracted with 0.5 M aqueous sodium hydroxide solution (20 mL). The ethereal extracts were dried over sodium sulfate and
filtered. The filtrate was concentrated to provide $N$-Boc-pseudoephedrineamine $(R,R)$-274 in quantitative yield.

The basic aqueous phases were combined, the resulting solution was cooled in an ice-water cooling bath, and 1 M aqueous hydrochloric acid solution was added dropwise until the pH of the solution was ~2. The acidified aqueous phase was then extracted with ethyl acetate $(3 \times 25 \text{ mL})$. The organic extracts were combined and were dried over sodium sulfate. The dried organic solution was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated to provide crude $N$-Boc-protected acid. The crude material was purified via flash-column chromatography $(2 \rightarrow 5\%$ methanol–dichloromethane + $1\%$ acetic acid) to give $N$-Boc-protected acid 251 (110 mg, 25%) as an off-white foam. TLC $(10\%$ methanol–dichloromethane): $R_f = 0.15$ (UV, PMA). $^1$H NMR (500 MHz, CD$_3$OD), $\delta$: 4.66–4.46 (m, 3H), 4.41 (s, 1H), 4.37 (s, 1H), 1.46 (s, 9H). FTIR (neat), cm$^{-1}$: 3339 (br), 2980 (m), 1694 (s), 1394 (s), 1161 (s), 1024 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for $(C_{10}H_{17}F_2NO_5 + Na)^+$: 292.0967; Found: 292.0954.
Hydroxamate 252.

To a 25-mL round bottom flask equipped with a stir bar was added the N-Boc acid 251 (100 mg, 0.370 mmol, 1 equiv) and dry dichloromethane (3.70 mL). O-Benzylhydroxylamine (52.0 μL, 0.430 mmol, 1.15 equiv) was added, followed by EDC (78.0 mg, 0.410 mmol, 1.1 equiv) in one portion. Reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of starting material by LC–MS analysis of aliquots removed from the reaction mixture. After 14 h, additional dichloromethane (10 mL) was added and the reaction mixture was washed sequentially with water (15 mL) and saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution (15 mL). The organic phase was dried over sodium sulfate and was filtered. The filtrate was concentrated to provide crude material which was purified via flash-column chromatography (20→40% ethyl acetate–hexanes) to provide the hydroxamate 252 (123 mg, 88%) as a white foam. TLC (20% ethyl acetate–hexanes): Rf = 0.55 (UV, PMA). 1H NMR (600 MHz, CD3OD), δ: 7.43 (d, 2H, J = 6.5 Hz), 7.38–7.34 (m, 3H), 4.47–4.37 (m, 4H), 4.21 (s, 1H), 1.45 (s, 9H). [*Note: Two proton signals are hidden under the residual water peak at δ 4.87.] FTIR (neat), cm⁻¹: 3273 (br), 2978 (m), 1674 (s), 1368 (s), 1163 (s), 1026 (s), 700 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C₁₇H₂₄F₂N₂O₅ – H)⁻: 373.1581; Found: 373.1562.
\[ \beta\text{-Lactam 253}. \]

\[ \text{BnO-N} | \text{CH} = \text{CH}_2 \text{F} | \text{NHBOc} \]

\[ \xrightarrow{\text{PPh}_3, \text{CCl}_4, \text{NET}_3, \text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2, 45\%} \]

\[ \text{BocHN} | \text{CH} = \text{CH}_2 \text{F} | \text{OBn} \]

A 25-mL round bottom flask equipped with a stir bar was charged with hydroxamate 252 (123 mg, 0.329 mmol, 1 equiv). Dry acetonitrile (3.3 mL) was added, followed by carbon tetrachloride (190 μL, 1.97 mmol, 6 equiv), triphenylphosphine (172 mg, 0.657 mmol, 2 equiv) and triethylamine (105 μL, 0.756 mmol, 2.3 equiv). The reaction mixture continued to stir at 23 °C. After 2 h, the reaction mixture had darkened to brown in color. Reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of starting material by LC–MS analysis of aliquots removed from the reaction mixture. Upon complete consumption of the starting material, the reaction mixture was concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified via flash-column chromatography (20% ethyl acetate–hexanes) to provide \( \beta \)-lactam 253 (53 mg, 45%). TLC (20% ethyl acetate–hexanes): \( R_f = 0.44 \) (UV, PMA). \(^1\)H NMR (500 MHz, CD\(_3\)OD), δ: 7.45–7.38 (m, 5H), 5.01–4.96 (m, 2H), 4.84–4.70 (m, 3H), 4.62–4.43 (m, 2H), 1.44 (s, 9H). FTIR (neat), cm\(^{-1}\): 3323 (br), 2980 (m), 2936 (m), 1790 (s), 1721 (s), 1163 (s), 1026 (s), 700 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C\(_{17}\)H\(_{22}\)F\(_2\)N\(_2\)O\(_4\) + Na\(^+\)): 379.1440; Found: 379.1437.
To a 10-mL round bottom flask equipped with a stir bar and charged with \( \beta \)-lactam 253 (53.0 mg, 0.149 mmol, 1 equiv) was added methanol (1.49 mL), followed by 10% palladium on carbon (16.0 mg). The reaction flask was then equipped with a balloon of hydrogen. An atmosphere of hydrogen was introduced by briefly evacuating the flask and backfilling with hydrogen gas. This process was repeated three times and the reaction mixture was stirred under an atmosphere of hydrogen at 23 °C. Reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of starting material by LC–MS analysis of aliquots removed from the reaction mixture. After 3 h, the reaction mixture was filtered through a pad of Celite on a fritted filter in order to remove the palladium. The methanolic filtrate was concentrated \textit{in vacuo} to provide \( N \)-hydroxyl \( \beta \)-lactam 254 (40 mg) in quantitative yield and was used without further purification. TLC (5% methanol–dichloromethane): \( R_f = 0.31 \) (UV, PMA). \( ^1H \) NMR (600 MHz, CD\textsubscript{3}OD), \( \delta \): 4.86–4.71 (m, 4H), 4.63 (s, 1H), 1.45 (s, 9H). HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C\textsubscript{10}H\textsubscript{16}F\textsubscript{2}N\textsubscript{2}O\textsubscript{4} + Na\textsuperscript{+}): 289.0976; Found: 289.1013.
Monocyclic $\beta$-lactam core 255.

A 10-mL round bottom flask equipped with a stir bar was charged with $N$-hydroxyl $\beta$-lactam 254 (27.0 mg, 0.101 mmol, 1 equiv). Pyridine (254 μL) was added and the reaction vessel was placed in an ice-water cooling bath. Sulfur trioxide–pyridine complex (21.0 mg, 0.132 mmol, 1.3 equiv) was added. The cooling bath was removed after 5 minutes and the vessel continued to stir at 23 °C. Reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of starting material by LC–MS analysis of aliquots removed from the reaction mixture. After 3 h, the reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo to remove the pyridine and the residue was dissolved in methanol (2 mL). The $O$-sulfonic acid $\beta$-lactam solution in methanol was stirred with Dowex Marathon C Ion exchange beads for 15 min. The methanolic solution was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated to provide the $O$-sulfonic acid 275 (37.0 mg) in quantitative yield and was used without further purification.

A 10-mL round bottom flask equipped with a stir bar was charged with $O$-sulfonic acid 275 (37.0 mg, 0.101 mmol, 1 equiv), followed by dichloromethane (0.3 mL). The reaction vessel was placed in an ice-water cooling bath and a 1:1 mixture of trifluoroacetic acid:dichloromethane (0.7 mL) was added. Reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of starting material by LC–MS analysis of aliquots removed from the reaction mixture. After 20 min at 0 °C, the reaction mixture was concentrated to provide core 255 (25.0 mg) in quantitative yield as a white solid was used without further purification.

$^1$H NMR (600 MHz, CD$_3$OD), $\delta$: 5.08 (dd, 1H, $J = 11.5$ Hz, 2.7 Hz), 5.00 (d, 1H, $J = 11.5$ Hz), 4.94–4.81 (m, 2H), 4.65 (s, 1H). [*Note: The
Amide 276.

A 10-mL round bottom flask equipped with a stir bar was charged with core 255 (25.0 mg, 0.101 mmol, 1 equiv), followed by wet tetrahydrofuran (0.4 mL). The reaction vessel was placed in an ice-water cooling bath. Triethylamine (42.5 μL, 0.305 mmol, 3 equiv) was added and the cooling bath was removed after 5 minutes. The vessel continued to stir at 23 °C as 249 (73.0 mg, 0.152 mmol, 1.5 equiv) was added portion-wise. Reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of the core by LC–MS analysis of aliquots removed from the reaction mixture. After 2.5 h, ethyl acetate (10 mL) and water (10 mL) were added and the layers were separated. The organic layer was washed with 0.5 M aqueous hydrochloric acid solution (2 × 10 mL) and the aqueous extracts were combined and concentrated with no additional heating on the rotovap bath. The crude material was purified via reverse-phase HPLC (Agilent Extend-C18, 90:10→70:30 water–acetonitrile + 0.1% formic acid, then 100% acetonitrile + 0.1% formic acid) to provide amide 276 (3.0 mg, 5%) as an off-white solid. $^1$H NMR (600 MHz, CD$_3$OD), δ: 7.14 (s, 1H), 5.33 (s, 1H), 5.00–4.83 (m, 4H), 1.60 (s, 3H), 1.59 (s, 3H), 1.47 (s, 9H). HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C$_{18}$H$_{25}$F$_2$N$_3$O$_9$S$_2$–H)$^-$: 556.0989; Found: 556.0985.
Bisfluoromethyl monobactam 256.

A 10-mL round bottom flask equipped with a stir bar was charged with the coupled product 276 (3.0 mg, 5.4 μmol, 1 equiv), followed by dry dichloromethane (0.1 mL) and anisole (53 μL, 0.48 mmol, 90 equiv). The reaction vessel was placed in an ice-water cooling bath. Trifluoroacetic acid (83 μL, 1.1 mmol, 200 equiv) was added and the vessel continued to stir at 0 °C as reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of the starting material by LC–MS analysis of aliquots removed from the reaction mixture. After 30 min, additional trifluoroacetic acid (0.5 mL) was added and the reaction vessel continued to stir at 0 °C. After 45 additional minutes, toluene (10 mL) was added and the reaction mixture was concentrated without additional heating on the rotovap bath. Water (2 mL) and hexanes (2 mL) were added and then layers were separated. A reverse-phase HPLC sample was prepared from the aqueous phase and the crude material was purified (Agilent Extend-C18, 90:10→70:30 water–acetonitrile + 0.1% formic acid, then 100% acetonitrile + 0.1% formic acid)\(^\text{161}\) to provide O-sulfonic acid monobactam 256 (1.2 mg, 45%) as an off-white solid. HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C_{14}H_{17}F_{2}N_{5}O_{5}S_{2}–H): 500.0358; Found: 500.0469.

\(^{161}\) Care must be taken upon concentration of the aqueous fractions. Labile hydrolysis of the O-sulfonic acid occurs upon concentration of the HPLC fractions with formic acid present. Therefore, toluene was added to all desired fractions and the fractions were concentrated without additional heating on the rotovap bath.
One pot, two step synthesis of N-Boc acid 257 from aldol adduct 198.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{198} & \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH (1.0 equiv)}} \text{257} \\
\text{198} & \xrightarrow{\text{Boc}_2\text{O, NaOH}} \text{257}
\end{align*}
\]

A 200-mL round bottom flask equipped with a stir bar was charged with aldol adduct 198 (3.55 g, 6.90 mmol, 1 equiv). A 1:1 mixture of tetrahydrofuran:methanol (30 mL) was added, followed by aqueous sodium hydroxide solution (1.0 M, 6.90 mL, 6.90 mmol, 1 equiv). Reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of starting material by TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane + 0.5% saturated aqueous ammonium hydroxide solution). After 1 d, the reaction mixture was concentrated to dryness and the residue was dissolved in a 1:1 mixture of water:1,4-dioxane (50 mL). The reaction vessel was placed in an ice-water cooling bath. Aqueous sodium hydroxide solution (1.0 M, 20.7 mL, 20.7 mmol, 3 equiv) was added, followed by di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (4.81 mL, 20.7 mmol, 3 equiv). The cooling bath was removed after 5 minutes and the vessel continued to stir at 23 °C. Reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of starting material by LC–MS analysis of aliquots removed from the reaction mixture. After 16 h, water (90 mL) was added and the mixture was washed with three portions of ether (90 mL). The ethereal extracts were combined and back-extracted with 0.5 M aqueous
sodium hydroxide solution (50 mL). The ethereal extracts were dried over sodium sulfate and filtered. The filtrate was concentrated to provide \( N \)-Boc-pseudoephedrine in quantitative yield.

The basic aqueous phases were combined, the resulting solution was cooled in an ice-water cooling bath, and 1 M aqueous hydrochloric acid solution was added dropwise until the pH of the solution was ~2. The acidified aqueous phase was then extracted with ethyl acetate (3 × 75 mL). The organic extracts were combined and were dried over sodium sulfate. The dried organic solution was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated to provide \( N \)-Boc-protected acid 257 (2.23 g, 80%) as a clear oil. TLC (30% ethyl acetate–hexanes + 1% acetic acid): \( R_f = 0.15 \) (UV, PMA). \(^1\)H NMR (3:1 ratio of rotamers; major rotamer reported, 600 MHz, CD\(_3\)OD), \( \delta \): 4.26 (s, 1H), 3.80 (d, 1H, \( J = 9.4 \) Hz), 3.45 (d, 1H, \( J = 9.4 \) Hz), 1.43 (s, 9H), 1.35 (s, 3H), 1.15–1.10 (m, 21H). FTIR (neat), cm\(^{-1}\): 3331 (br), 2943 (m), 2866 (m), 1715 (s) 1368 (s), 1163 (s), 1101 (s), 683 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C\(_{19}\)H\(_{39}\)NO\(_6\)Si + NH\(_4\))\(^+\): 423.2885; Found: 423.2887.
To a 200-mL round bottom flask equipped with a stir bar was added N-Boc acid 257 (2.23 g, 5.42 mmol, 1 equiv) and dry dichloromethane (54 mL). O-Benzylhydroxylamine (726 μL, 6.24 mmol, 1.15 equiv) was added, followed by EDC (1.14 g, 5.97 mmol, 1.1 equiv) in one portion. Reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of starting material by LC–MS analysis of aliquots removed from the reaction mixture. After 1 h, additional dichloromethane (10 mL) was added and the reaction mixture was washed sequentially with water (25 mL) and saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution (25 mL). The organic phase was dried over sodium sulfate and was filtered. The filtrate was concentrated to provide crude material which was purified via flash-column chromatography (10→30% ethyl acetate–hexanes) to provide hydroxamate 258 (1.77 g, 64%) as a white foam. TLC (33% ethyl acetate–hexanes): Rf = 0.55 (UV, PMA). 1H NMR (600 MHz, CD3OD), δ: 7.44 (d, 2H, J = 7.0 Hz), 7.38–7.33 (m, 3H), 4.06 (s, 1H), 3.81 (d, 1H, J = 9.4 Hz), 3.39 (d, 1H, J = 9.4 Hz), 1.43 (s, 9H), 1.27 (s, 3H), 1.15–1.09 (m, 21H). [*Note: Two proton signals are hidden under the residual water peak at δ 4.87.] FTIR (neat), cm⁻¹: 3431 (br), 3242 (br), 2943 (m), 2866 (m), 1674 (s) 1499 (s), 1167 (s), 1099 (s), 683 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C26H46N2O6Si + K)⁺: 549.2757; Found: 549.2762.
β-Lactam 259.

A 100-mL round bottom flask equipped with a stir bar was charged with hydroxamate 258 (1.74 g, 3.41 mmol, 1 equiv). Dry acetonitrile (34 mL) was added, followed by carbon tetrachloride (1.97 mL, 20.4 mmol, 6 equiv), triphenylphosphine (894 mg, 3.41 mmol, 1 equiv) and triethylamine (1.09 mL, 7.84 mmol, 2.3 equiv). The reaction mixture continued to stir at 23 °C; after 1 h, an additional portion of triphenylphosphine (295 mg, 0.124 mmol, 0.33 equiv) was added. Reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of starting material by LC–MS analysis of aliquots removed from the reaction mixture. After 2 h, the reaction mixture had darkened to brown in color and was concentrated in vacuo. The residue was purified via flash-column chromatography (5→50% ethyl acetate–hexanes) to provide β-lactam 259 (1.13 g, 67%). TLC (40% ethyl acetate–hexanes): Rf = 0.28 (UV, PMA). 1H NMR (600 MHz, CD3OD), δ: 7.43–7.41 (m, 2H), 7.39–7.35 (m, 3H), 5.04 (d, 1H, J = 11.2 Hz), 4.94 (d, 1H, J = 11.2 Hz), 4.77 (s, 1H), 3.93 (d, 1H, J = 11.2 Hz), 3.79 (d, 1H, J = 11.2 Hz), 1.44 (s, 9H), 1.15–1.11 (m, 3H), 1.10–1.08 (m, 18H), 0.97 (s, 3H). FTIR (neat), cm⁻¹: 3322 (br), 2926 (m), 2866 (m), 1770 (s) 1721 (s), 1167 (s), 1107 (s), 683 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C26H44N2O5Si + K)⁺: 531.2651; Found: 531.2668.
N-hydroxyl β-lactam 260.

To a 100-mL round bottom flask equipped with a stir bar and charged with β–lactam 259 (1.10 g, 2.23 mmol, 1 equiv) was added methanol (45 mL), followed by 10% palladium on carbon (238 mg). The reaction flask was then equipped with a balloon of hydrogen. An atmosphere of hydrogen was introduced by briefly evacuating the flask and backfilling with hydrogen gas. This process was repeated three times and the reaction mixture was stirred under an atmosphere of hydrogen at 23 °C. Reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of starting material by LC–MS analysis of aliquots removed from the reaction mixture. After 2 h, the reaction mixture was filtered through a pad of Celite on a fritted filter in order to remove the palladium. The methanolic filtrate was concentrated and purified via flash-column chromatography (1→4% methanol–dichloromethane) to provide the N-hydroxyl β–lactam 260 (683 mg, 76%) as a white foam. TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane): Rf = 0.31 (UV, PMA). ¹H NMR (600 MHz, CD₃OD), δ: 4.81 (s, 1H), 3.96 (d, 1H, J = 11.2 Hz), 3.82 (d, 1H, J = 11.2 Hz), 1.45 (s, 9H), 1.17–1.13 (m, 6H), 1.12–1.11 (m, 18H). FTIR (neat), cm⁻¹: 3312 (br), 2942 (m), 2866 (m), 1761 (s), 1713 (s), 1165 (s), 1111 (s), 802 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C₁₉H₃₈N₂O₅Si + H)⁺: 403.2623; Found: 406.2639.
To a 25-mL round bottom flask equipped with a stir bar and charged with N-hydroxyl β–lactam 260 (103 mg, 0.256 mmol, 1 equiv) was added a 3:2 mixture of methanol:4.5 M aqueous ammonium acetate solution (3.65 mL). Argon gas was bubbled through the homogeneous solution for 15 minutes before a solution of titanium trichloride (0.500 mL, ~10 wt.% in 20-30 wt. % hydrochloric acid solution) was added at 23 °C. Reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of starting material by TLC and LC–MS analysis of aliquots removed from the reaction mixture. After 5 h, saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution (18 mL) and 2:1 ethyl acetate:tetrahydrofuran (18 mL) were added. The layers were separated and the organic phase was washed sequentially with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate solution (20 mL), water (20 mL), and saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution (20 mL). The organic phase was dried over sodium sulfate and was filtered. The filtrate was concentrated to provide crude material which was purified via flash-column chromatography (1→4% methanol–dichloromethane) to provide the N-H β–lactam 261 (84 mg, 85%) as a white foam. TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane): Rf = 0.38 (UV, PMA). 1H NMR (600 MHz, CD3OD), δ: 4.79 (s, 1H), 3.81–3.78 (m, 2H), 1.45 (s, 9H), 1.22 (s, 3H), 1.17–1.13 (m, 3H), 1.12–1.10 (m, 18H). FTIR (neat), cm⁻¹: 3304 (br), 2928 (m), 2866 (m), 1761 (s) 1721 (s), 1169 (s), 683 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C19H38N2O4Si + H)⁺: 387.2688; Found: 387.2674.
Amine 262.

A 10-mL round bottom flask equipped with a stir bar was charged with \(N\)-H \(\beta\)-lactam 261 (58.0 mg, 0.150 mmol, 1 equiv), followed by dichloromethane (1.5 mL) and anisole (410 \(\mu\)L, 3.75 mmol, 25 equiv). The reaction vessel was placed in an ice-water cooling bath and trifluoroacetic acid (580 \(\mu\)L, 7.50 mmol, 50 equiv) was added. Reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of starting material by LC–MS analysis of aliquots removed from the reaction mixture. After 2 h at 0 °C, 1.0 M sodium hydroxide solution was added dropwise until pH ~14. The now basic aqueous phase was extracted with dichloromethane (3 \times 7 mL). The organic extracts were combined, washed with saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution (15 mL), and dried over sodium sulfate. The dried organic solution was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated to provide the amine 262 (30.0 mg, 70%) as a clear film. TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane): \(R_f = 0.27\) (UV, PMA). \(^1\)H NMR (600 MHz, CD\(_3\)OD), \(\delta\): 3.99 (s, 1H), 3.78–3.73 (m, 2H), 1.28 (s, 3H), 1.16–1.09 (m, 21H). FTIR (neat), cm\(^{-1}\): 3314 (br), 2941 (m), 2866 (m), 1755 (s) 1724 (s), 1105 (s), 1059 (s), 712 (s), 681 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for \((C_{14}H_{30}N_{2}O_{2}Si + Na)^+\): 309.1969; Found: 309.1975.
To a 10-mL round bottom flask equipped with a stir bar was added the amine \( \text{262} \) (30.0 mg, 1.05 mmol, 1 equiv) and dry dichloromethane (1.05 mL). Acid \( \text{263} \) (45.0 mg, 1.05 mmol, 1 equiv) was added, followed by EDC (21 mg, 1.10 mmol, 1.05 equiv) in one portion. Reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of starting material by LC–MS analysis of aliquots removed from the reaction mixture. After 1 h, additional dichloromethane (10 mL) was added and the reaction mixture was washed sequentially with water (25 mL), 1.0 M aqueous hydrochloric acid solution (25 mL), water (25 mL), and saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution (25 mL). The organic phase was dried over sodium sulfate and was filtered. The filtrate was concentrated to provide crude material which was purified via flash-column chromatography (1→10% methanol–dichloromethane) to provide amide \( \text{264} \) (47.0 mg, 64%) as a white foam.

TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane): \( R_f = 0.33 \) (UV, PMA). \(^1\)H NMR (600 MHz, CD\(_3\)OD), \( \delta \): 7.33 (s, 1H), 5.21 (s, 1H), 3.90–3.85 (m, 2H), 1.54 (s, 9H), 1.52 (s, 3H), 1.50 (s, 3H), 1.48 (s, 9H), 1.32 (s, 3H), 1.19–1.15 (m, 3H), 1.14–1.11 (m, 18H). FTIR (neat), cm\(^{-1}\): 3256 (br), 2942 (m), 2866 (m), 1755 (s), 1721 (s), 1553 (s), 1148 (s), 913 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C\(_{32}\)H\(_{55}\)N\(_5\)O\(_8\)S\(_2\)Si + H\(^+\))\(^+\): 698.3613; Found: 698.3617.
**N-Sulfonic Acid 265.**

A 10-mL round bottom flask equipped with a stir bar was charged with amide **264** (13 mg, 19 μmol, 1 equiv). Dimethylformamide (0.2 mL) was added, followed by sulfur trioxide–dimethylformamide complex (29 mg, 190 μmol, 10 equiv) and the reaction mixture continued to stir at 23 °C. Reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of starting material by LC–MS analysis of aliquots removed from the reaction mixture. After 3 h, water (0.6 mL) was added, followed by ethyl acetate (0.5 mL) and half saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution (0.5 mL). The layers were separated and the aqueous phase was extracted with ethyl acetate (3 × 2 mL). The combined organic extracts were washed sequentially with half saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution (5 mL) and saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution (5 mL). The washed organic phase was dried over sodium sulfate and the dried organic phase was filtered. The filtrate was concentrated to provide the **N-sulfonic acid 265** (6.0 mg, 41%) which was used without further purification.
Hydroxymethyl monobactam 266.

Concentrated aqueous hydrofluoric acid solution (48 wt%, 20 μL) was added to a solution of the N-sulfonic acid 265 (6.0 mg, 7.7 μmol, 1 equiv) in acetonitrile (0.5 mL) in a polypropylene reaction vessel at 23 °C. Reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of starting material by LC–MS analysis of aliquots removed from the reaction mixture. Upon consumption of the starting material and complete global deprotections, excess methoxytrimethylsilylamine (0.5 mL) was added to quench the hydrofluoric acid. The reaction mixture was concentrated and the residue was purified by reverse-phase HPLC (Agilent Extend-C18, 90:10→10:90 water–acetonitrile + 0.1% formic acid) to afford hydroxymethyl monobactam 266 (0.5 mg, 14%).

$^1$H NMR (600 MHz, CD$_3$OD), δ: 6.86 (s, 1H), 5.26 (s, 1H), 4.05 (d, 1H, $J = 12.4$ Hz), 3.71 (d, 1H, $J = 12.4$ Hz), 1.57 (s, 3H), 1.54 (s, 3H), 1.46 (s, 3H). HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C$_{14}$H$_{19}$N$_5$O$_6$S$_2$ + H)$^+$: 466.0697; Found: 466.0711.
Alcohol 267.

Amide 264 (40 mg, 57 μmol, 1 equiv) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (0.5 mL) in a polypropylene reaction tube. Excess triethylamine trihydrofluoride (93 μL, 570 μmol, 10 equiv) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred at 23 °C for 20 h. The reaction mixture was quenched with the addition of an aqueous potassium phosphate buffer solution (pH 7.0, 2 mL). Ethyl acetate (2 mL) was added and the layers were separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (2 × 3 mL). The organic layers were combined and were washed with saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution (8 mL). The washed solution was dried over sodium sulfate and the dried solution was filtered. The filtrate was concentrated to provide crude material which was purified via flash-column chromatography (1→4% methanol–dichloromethane) to recover starting amide 264 (13 mg, 33%) and to provide alcohol 267 (17 mg, 55%) as a clear film. 

TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane): R_f = 0.25 (UV, PMA). 

^1H NMR (600 MHz, CD3OD), δ: 7.33 (s, 1H), 5.06 (s, 1H), 3.70–3.65 (m, 2H), 1.54 (s, 9H), 1.52 (s, 3H), 1.51 (s, 3H), 1.48 (s, 9H), 1.32 (s, 3H). FTIR (neat), cm⁻¹: 3283 (br), 2980 (m), 2936 (m), 1721 (s), 1553 (s), 1147 (s), 976 (s), 737 (s); HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C_{23}H_{35}N_{5}O_{8}S + H)^+: 542.2279; Found: 542.2301.
Carbamate 268.

A 5-mL round bottom flask equipped with a stir bar was charged with carbonyldiimidazole (5.3 mg, 33 μmol, 1.05 equiv), followed by dichloromethane (0.2 mL). A solution of alcohol 267 (17 mg, 31 μmol, 1 equiv) in benzene (0.2 mL) was added. Reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of starting material by LC–MS analysis of aliquots removed from the reaction mixture. After 1 h, dichloromethane (3 mL) was added, followed by half saturated aqueous ammonium chloride solution (3 mL). The layers were separated and the organic phase was washed with an additional portion of half saturated aqueous ammonium chloride solution (3 mL). The washed solution was dried over sodium sulfate and the dried solution was filtered. The filtrate was concentrated to provide crude carbamate 268 (16 mg, 80%) which was used without further purification.
Carbamate 270.

A 5-mL round bottom flask equipped with a stir bar was charged with carbamate 268 (16 mg, 25 μmol, 1 equiv), followed by benzene (1 mL). Argon was bubbled through the reaction mixture for 10 minutes at 23 °C before amine 269 (17 mg, 50 μmol, 2 equiv) was added. The reaction mixture was placed in a 50 °C oil bath and reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of starting material by LC–MS analysis of aliquots removed from the reaction mixture. After 18 h, the reaction flask containing a now green reaction mixture was removed from the oil bath and allowed to cool to 23 °C. The reaction mixture was concentrated and the residue was dissolved in dichloromethane (3 mL). The organic phase was washed sequentially with half saturated aqueous ammonium chloride solution (3 mL), water (3 mL) and saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution (3 mL). The washed solution was dried over sodium sulfate and the dried solution was filtered. The filtrate was concentrated to provide crude material which was purified via flash-column chromatography (1→10% methanol–dichloromethane) to provide carbamate 270 (10 mg, 44%) as a green solid. TLC (10% methanol–dichloromethane): Rf = 0.30 (UV, PMA). 1H NMR (600 MHz, CD3OD), δ: 7.73 (s, 1H), 7.46–7.33 (m, 10H), 6.34 (s, 1H), 5.25 (s, 2H), 5.11 (s, 1H), 5.02 (s, 2H), 4.92 (s, 1H), 4.60 (br s, 4H), 4.38 (d, 1H, J = 11.7 Hz), 4.24–4.19 (m, 2H), 4.16 (d, 1H, J = 11.7 Hz), 1.53 (s, 9H), 1.52 (s, 3H), 1.50 (s, 3H), 1.47 (s, 9H), 1.37 (s, 3H). HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C44H53N7O12S + H)+: 904.3546; Found: 904.3563.
N-Sulfonic Acid 271.

A 10-mL round bottom flask equipped with a stir bar was charged with carbamate 271 (10 mg, 11 μmol, 1 equiv). Dimethylformamide (0.1 mL) was added, followed by sulfur trioxide–dimethylformamide complex (17 mg, 110 μmol, 10 equiv) and the reaction mixture continued to stir at 23 °C. Reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of starting material by LC–MS analysis of aliquots removed from the reaction mixture. After 45 min, water (0.6 mL) was added, followed by ethyl acetate (0.5 mL) and half saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution (0.5 mL). The layers were separated and the aqueous phase was extracted with ethyl acetate (3 × 2 mL). The combined organic extracts were washed sequentially with half saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution (5 mL) and saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution (5 mL). The washed organic phase was dried over sodium sulfate and the dried organic phase was filtered. The filtrate was concentrated to provide the N-sulfonic acid 271 (11 mg) as a green solid in quantitative yield and was carried forward without further purification. HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C_{44}H_{53}N_{7}O_{15}S_{2} + H)^{+}: 984.3114; Found: 984.3137.
N-Sulfonic Acid Monobactam 272.

A 5-mL round bottom flask equipped with a stir bar was charged with the N-sulfonic acid 271 (11 mg, 11 μmol, 1 equiv), followed by dry dichloromethane (45 μL). Boron trichloride (1.0 M in p-xylenes, 78 μL, 78 μmol, 7 equiv) was added at 23 °C. Reaction progress was monitored by the consumption of the starting material by LC–MS analysis of aliquots removed from the reaction mixture. After 90 min, water (0.3 mL) was added and the reaction mixture was concentrated. A reverse-phase HPLC sample was prepared from the residue and was purified (Agilent Extend-C18, 90:10→10:90 water–acetonitrile + 0.1% formic acid) to afford N-sulfonic acid monobactam 272 (2.5 mg, 35%) as a light green solid. ¹H NMR (600 MHz, CD₃OD), δ: 8.20 (s, 1H), 7.19 (s, 1H), 7.19 (s, 1H), 5.29 (s, 1H), 4.71 (d, 1H, J = 11.7 Hz), 4.62 (d, 1H, J = 17.3 Hz), 4.46 (d, 1H, J = 17.3 Hz), 4.19 (d, 1H, J = 11.7 Hz), 1.64 (s, 3H), 1.63 (s, 3H), 1.51 (s, 3H). HRMS (ESI): Calcd for (C₂₁H₂₅N₇O₁₃S₂ + H)⁺: 648.1025; Found: 648.1035.
Appendix A

Catalog of Spectra
$E = \text{CO}_2\text{Ph}$
Saturation transfer experiments (1D gradient nOe)
Chemical Shift (ppm)

(minor diastereomer)
Chemical Shift (ppm)

(minor diastereomer)
Chemical Shift (ppm)

Chemical Shift (ppm)